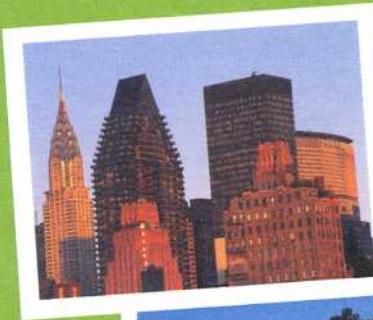
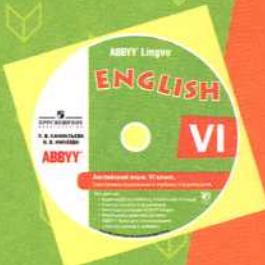


O. V. AFANASYEVA
I. V. MIKHEEVA

ENGLISH



Student's Book



VI

PROSVESHCHENIYE
PUBLISHERS

О. В. АФАНАСЬЕВА
И. В. МИХЕЕВА

АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

VI класс

Учебник для общеобразовательных
учреждений и школ с углублённым
изучением английского языка
с приложением на электронном носителе

Рекомендовано
Министерством образования и науки
Российской Федерации

16-е издание

Москва «Просвещение» 2012

УДК 373.167.1:811.111
ББК 81.2Англ-922
А94

На учебник получены положительные заключения Российской академии наук (№ 10106-5215/15 от 31.10.07) и Российской академии образования (№ 01-379/5/7д от 22.10.07).

Афанасьева О. В.

А94 Английский язык. VI класс : учеб. для общеобразоват. учреждений и шк. с углубл. изучением англ. яз. с прил. на электрон. носителе/ О. В. Афанасьева, И. В. Михеева. — 16-е изд. — М. : Просвещение, 2012. — 336 с. : ил. — ISBN 978-5-09-026873-8.

УДК 373.167.1:811.111
ББК 81.2Англ-922

Учебное издание

**Афанасьева Ольга Васильевна
Михеева Ирина Владимировна**

**АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК
VI класс**

**Учебник для общеобразовательных учреждений
и школ с углублённым изучением**

английского языка с приложением на электронном носителе

Центр группы германских языков. Руководитель Центра *В. В. Копылова*. Зам. руководителя *Н. И. Максименко*. Редактор *Е. И. Бухарова*. Художественный редактор *Э. К. Реоли*. Художники *И. В. Молчанова, И. В. Караваев, В. В. Воробьёв*. Технические редакторы *Т. Е. Хотюн, С. Н. Терехова*. Корректоры *И. Б. Окунева, Н. Д. Цухай*

Налоговая льгота — Общероссийский классификатор продукции ОК 005-93—953000. Изд. лиц. Серия ИД № 05824 от 12.09.01. Подписано в печать 16.11.11. Формат 70×90¹/₁₆. Бумага офсетная. Гарнитура Школьная. Печать офсетная. Уч.-изд. л. 18,01. Доп. тираж 18 000 экз. Заказ № 32004 (Ц-8м).

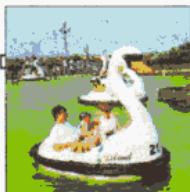
Открытое акционерное общество «Издательство «Просвещение». 127521, Москва, 3-й проезд Марьиной рощи, 41.

Отпечатано в полном соответствии с качеством предоставленных материалов в ОАО «Смоленский полиграфический комбинат». 214020, г. Смоленск, ул. Смольянинова, д. 1.

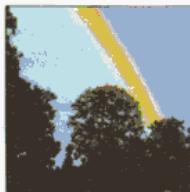
ISBN 978-5-09-026873-8

© Издательство «Просвещение», 1998, 2002, 2007
© Художественное оформление.
Издательство «Просвещение», 1998, 2005, 2007
Все права защищены

UNIT 1 WEATHER



HOLIDAYS



WEATHER FORECAST¹



TRAVELLING

LET US REVIEW

1 You all have been away from school for a long time. You certainly want to know how your friends spent their *holidays*. Ask them these questions to find out.

1. Did you stay at home in the summer holidays? If not, where did you go?
2. Did you go away in June, July or August?
3. What was the weather like during the summer? during your trip?
4. Did you go by car, by plane or by train? If you used several methods of travelling, which of them did you like the best?
5. Who did you go with?
6. Where did you stay?
 - a) In a hotel? What kind of room did you have? What was there in the room?
 - b) Was it a summer cottage? Where was it?
 - c) Was it some other place? Could you describe it?
7. Did you play any games in summer? What games did you play? Who was your usual partner? Who usually won?
8. You helped your parents during the summer, didn't you? How did you help them? What did you do?
9. Did you go for walks during the summer? How did you usually spend your mornings and evenings? What did you use to do in the afternoon?

¹ weather forecast ['weðər 'fɔ:kəst] — прогноз погоды

2 Look at the pictures and say how Jane, Sally, Nick and Mike spent their holidays. The words from the boxes can help you.

Jane



- to travel about Russia
- to travel by plane (car, bus...)
- to stay at a large hotel
- to have a double room
- to have all modern conveniences
- to be sunny, hot and pleasant
- to swim, to lie in the sun
- to play different games
- to enjoy the holiday

Sally



- to travel by ship
- to be on board the ship for seven days
- to visit Spain, Italy, Greece
- to see interesting places
- to meet different people
- to learn a lot
- to visit museums and galleries
- to be pleasant (*about weather*)

Mike



- to stay at home
- to be sick/ill (*about granny*)
- to have to
 - a) help about the house
 - b) do the shopping
 - c) call a doctor
 - d) buy medicines
 - e) warm up food
- to be free early mornings
- to have a lot of free time in the evening
- to read a lot, to watch videos
- to play football, volleyball
- to play on the computer

Nick



- to go to the country
- to be fine (*about weather*)
- to live in a small cottage near the farm
- to have a lot of animals on the farm
- to feed the animals
- to look after the animals
- to help about the house
- to work in the garden
- to water the flowers, plants and vegetables
- to get some money for the job

<i>The Present Indefinite (Simple) Tense</i>			<i>The Past Indefinite (Simple) Tense</i>		
+	-	?	+	-	?
V/Vs	don't/doesn't V	do/does V?	Ved/V ₂	didn't V	did V?
1. He usually comes home at 5. 2. Nelly doesn't drink coffee for breakfast. 3. Do you work in a bank?	1. Yesterday he came at 4. 2. Last Friday she didn't drink it either. 3. Did you work in a bank 3 months ago?				

3 Now you are in class but only a few weeks ago you were on holiday. Make true sentences about *now* and *then*.

EXAMPLE: I go to school six days a week at present but I enjoyed my summer holidays a week ago.

at present

1. to go to school
2. to learn English
3. to meet schoolmates every day
4. to have a lot of classes
5. to get up early in the morning
6. to work hard
7. not to watch TV every evening
8. to rain a lot
9. not to be green and fresh (about the leaves of the trees)

a week (some weeks) ago

1. to enjoy summer holidays
2. to work in the garden helping Mother
3. to miss¹ one's schoolmates
4. to spend a lot of time on the beach
5. to keep late hours²
6. to play outdoors with friends
7. to watch lots of TV programmes
8. not to rain at all
9. to be green and fresh (about the leaves of the trees)

¹ to miss [mis] *sb* — скучать о ком-то

² to keep late hours — поздно ложиться

10. to do lessons

10. not to write any exercises at all

④ During her holidays Olga went to England. She spent a week there and met a nice English girl, called Linda. Complete the dialogue between the girls and then act it out. Don't forget to change over.

Olga: Excuse me, is this seat free?

Linda: _____ . Please sit down.

Olga: Thank you. Do you live here?

Linda: _____ . And where do you come from? I see you're a stranger here.

Olga: _____ .

Linda: Really? How interesting. I've never met anyone from Russia before. _____ ?
_____ ?

Olga: My name is Olga and I'm from Moscow.

Linda: I'm Linda. It's so nice to meet you! When _____ ?
_____ ?

Olga: I came to London last week to brush up my English.

Linda: I think your English is very good. How long _____ ?
_____ ?

Olga: I've been here for a week. I'm leaving for Moscow tomorrow.

Linda: That's a pity. I'd like to know more about Russia.
_____ ?

Olga: Certainly. I live at Flat 43, 25, Begovaya Street. I would so much like to get a letter from you.

Linda: _____ . Bye.

Olga: Bye.

- 5** Now Norman and Jack are at school again. Say what they used to do during their summer holidays.

EXAMPLE: Norman used to play the violin in the summer.

Norman

1. to play the violin
2. to listen to folk music
3. to watch cartoons
4. to visit picture galleries
5. to learn poems by heart
6. to lie in the sun

Jack

1. to play the guitar
2. to read detective stories
3. to listen to rock music
4. to play football a lot
5. to work on the computer
6. to swim in the river

FOCUS

**The Present Continuous
(Progressive) Tense**

to be { am
is
are } + Ving

Look! What a strong wind
is blowing!
Is it snowing hard now?

**The Past Continuous
(Progressive) Tense**

to be { was
were } + Ving

A strong wind **was blowing**
when she left the house.
It **was not** snowing at 5 yes-
terday.

- 6** Look at the pictures on pages 7–8 and say what the weather was like yesterday and what it is like today. The word box can help you.

sunny, cold, warm, wet, hot, foggy, cloudy, frosty,
clear, windy, rainy, to snow, to rain, to blow, to shine

Yesterday



Today



Yesterday



-5°



Today



-20°



- 7** a) Sasha has got a pen friend John who lives in Britain. In John's school the school year begins a week later than in Sasha's. Complete Sasha's letter to John.

Dear John,

It's nice to know that you (1. be) still on holiday. I wonder what you are doing now. You (2. fish)? You (3. swim)? You (4. lie) in the sun? Anyway I hope you (5. enjoy) yourself.

Only a few days ago I (6. fish), (7. swim) and (8. lie) in the sun too. But it (9. be) over now and I (10. be) back at school. The weather has changed and it (11. rain) heavily. And only yesterday the sun (12. shine) brightly in the cloudless sky. I think that autumn (13. be) here. What is the weather like where you are? Is it cold and foggy or is it warm and sunny? A wind (14. blow)? Our textbooks (15. write) so much about the weather in Britain. I'd like to know if what they write is true.

With best wishes,
Sasha

- b) Now name 5 things Sasha used to do in the summer and 5 things John used to do. (Ex. 5 can help you.)

EXAMPLE: Sasha used to swim a lot.

LET US READ AND LEARN

- 8** Listen to the speaker and repeat the sounds after him, 1.

- 9** a) Read these words in transcription.

[ɪn'dʌstriəl], ['læŋgwɪdʒ], ['fɒləʊ], ['klaimɪt], [bɪ'ləʊ], ['ɔ:dʒəns], ['enɪmɪ], ['grɪ:dɪ], ['ledʒənd], [stɔ:], [wɜ:s], ['teɪlə], [θɔ:t], [rɪ'fju:z].

- b) Listen to the tape, 2, and check your reading.



It's ten (degrees) above zero.

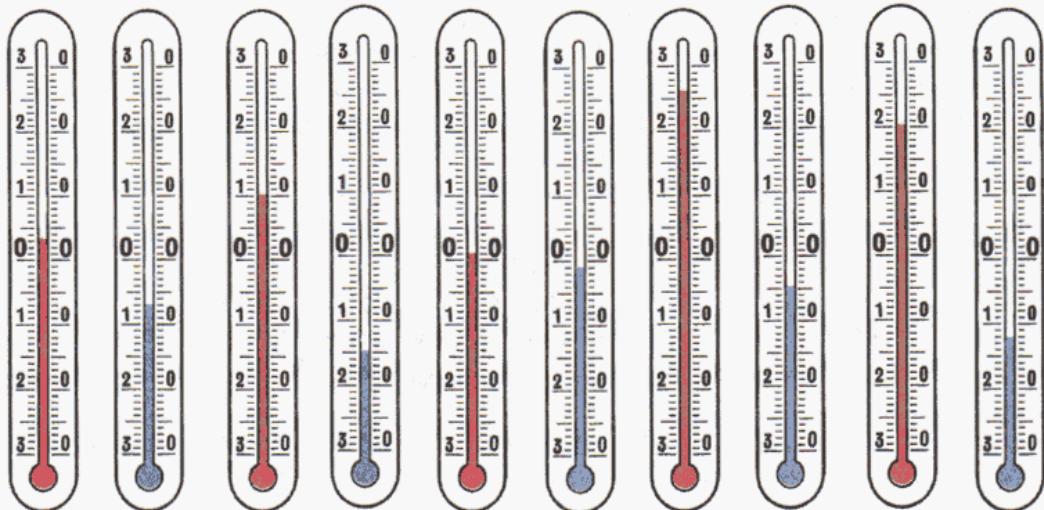


It's ten (degrees) below (zero). = It's minus ten.
It's ten (degrees) of frost.

It's zero (degrees).



10 Look at the thermometers and say what temperature they show.



11 Say what the temperature was in different cities three days ago.

Rome +5

Paris +1

St. Petersburg -18

Madrid +4

Moscow -14

Washington D.C. -10

Edinburgh -8

London +2

Cardiff +6

12 a) Read and guess what the underlined words mean.

1. You can see a rainbow ['reɪnbəʊ] in the sky when rain and sun come together.

2. There was an awful rainstorm ['reinstɔ:m] yesterday. It rained hard and a strong wind was blowing.
3. A barometer [bə'rɔmɪtə] is an instrument that helps to tell what the weather will be like.
4. There was a shower ['ʃauə] (a short rainfall) in the evening.
5. Weathermen ['weðəmən] collect information about weather.

b) Look these words up¹ to make sure you have guessed right.

13 Read the words, look them up and then study the word combinations and sentences to know how to use them.

- a **forecast** ['fɔ:ka:st] (*n*): a weather forecast. The weather forecast says there will be rain.
to forecast, forecast, forecast (*v*): They forecast good weather at the weekend.
- to expect** [ɪk'spekt] (*v*): to expect visitors, to expect cold weather. The child is tired so I expect he will go to bed early. I am expecting visitors tonight.
- daily** ['deili] (*adj*): a daily newspaper, a daily show. This is a daily television programme.
- calm** [kɑ:m] (*adj*): a calm voice, a calm morning, to stay calm. Today is a calm day, very good for playing badminton. I was afraid of the dog but I decided to stay calm.
- a **mist** [mist] (*n*): At 11 o'clock the mist cleared and the sun began shining. We could not see the house through the mist.
- misty** (*adj*): a misty morning. I looked through the window and saw that it was a grey misty morning. The forecast says it will be wet and misty tomorrow.
- changeable** ['tseɪndʒəbl] (*adj*): changeable weather. The weather in April is always changeable: it may be rainy in the morning and warm and sunny in the afternoon.
- to look out for**: On a morning like this everyone looks out for rain.

¹ to look up = to look up in the dictionary or vocabulary — посмотреть слова в словаре

- 14** This is a page from Mr Green's diary. Mr Green is a weatherman and every day he makes notes about the weather. Yesterday he was caught in a rain-storm and his diary got wet. Can you help Mr Green to read his notes? Use the words from ex. 12, ex. 13.

5.30 a.m.¹

It's very m^o but I think the^u t will clear before 10.00 o'clock. There's no wind and the morning is lm. We can t a orm in the afternoon.

9.30 a.m.²

The ba^u shows the pressure is high. But as the weather is very ble here we should look for a show in the evening. Then we'll be able to see a r^u too.

2.30 p.m.²

Here comes the rain. D^u showers are typical of August weather. So we, men, were right when we fo^u rains.

- 15** Listen to the sayings, 3, then choose two and learn them by heart.

WORDS ABOUT THE WEATHER

1. A sunshiny shower
Won't last an hour.

¹ a.m. [ə'm] — is used to show that we speak about the time between midnight and noon

² p.m. [pi:'em] — is used to show that we speak about the time between noon and midnight

2. Rainbow at night
Is the sailor's delight;¹
Rainbow at morning,
Sailor, take warning!²
3. When the days begin to lengthen,³
Then the cold begins to strengthen.⁴
4. Evening red and morning grey
Are the signs of a bonny⁵ day.
Evening grey and morning red,
Bring down rain on the farmer's head.
5. If bees⁶ stay at home,
Rain will soon come.
If they fly away,
Fine will be the day.

16 Listen to the dialogues for good and bad weather, ☰ 4, learn them by heart and act them out.

I

- A: It's a fine day today, isn't it?
B: Yes, it's nice and **bright** this morning.
A: Yes. Much better than yesterday. It's good to see the sun again.
B: Let's hope it will keep fine for the weekend.

II

- A: **What a nasty⁷ day!** It has been raining since yesterday morning.
B: They say it is going to get even colder.
A: Oh, no! I hate cold and rain.
B: So do I. Let's hope it won't last.

¹ delight [dɪ'lait] — восторг

² warning ['wɔ:nɪŋ] — предупреждение

³ lengthen ['leŋθən] — удлиняться, продлеваться

⁴ strengthen ['strenθən] — усиливаться

⁵ bonny ['bɒni] — красивый

⁶ a bee [bi:] — пчела

⁷ nasty ['na:sti] — отвратительный

17 Make up your own dialogues. Use the models of ex. 16. Use the following words and word combinations instead of those in bold type.¹

cool and wet²
warm and sunny
bright and frosty
hot and stuffy³
wet and foggy
cool and windy

What a hot day!
What a cold day!
What a sunny day!
What a rainy day!
What a windy day!
What a foggy day!
What a wet day!

LET US READ

18 Read the text and say what weathermen do.

THE WEATHER FORECAST

We get wet through when we are caught in a rainstorm without a coat. Sometimes we put on a sweater and then find that the weather has become hot. We do not always know what weather to expect. It is more serious when farmers lose their harvest because of rain, or a sailor gets into trouble when the wind rises. On TV and radio there are daily weather forecasts. Sometimes, the forecast is not quite right as the weather is not an easy thing to forecast.

All day and night, weathermen are collecting information from ships, planes, weather stations, and space stations. With the help of



¹ in bold [bəuld] type — жирным шрифтом

² cool and wet — прохладный и влажный

³ stuffy ['stʌfi] — душный



this information, they can understand what the weather will be like during the next few days. Although no two days will have exactly the same weather, some types of weather people can forecast.

When a barometer shows high pressure, the weather will be calm. In winter it will be cold and frosty. In summer it usually means misty mornings and hot sunny days. When the barometer shows low pressure, look out for rain and strong winds.

As a result of the weathermen's work we learn about the weather. This is one of the TV forecasts made by the BBC.¹

5. "Good evening, and here is the weather forecast for tomorrow.

Scotland will be cold with snow in the mountains. In the north of England it will be a wet day with heavy showers that will move to Northern Wales during the afternoon. The Midlands will be dry but cloudy. In the south of England the day will be bright and clear with a lot of sunshine but it may be windy in the evening." ☺

19 Say: "True", "False" or "Don't know."

1. Weathermen collect information from universities, colleges and offices.
2. If the barometer shows low pressure, the weather is rainy and windy.
3. We never know what weather to expect and there's nothing that can help us.
4. For some people it's very important to know the weather forecast.
5. When the weather is cold and frosty in winter, the barometer shows high pressure.

¹ the BBC — The British Broadcasting Corporation — a British organization which broadcasts programmes on radio and television

LET US TALK

20 Use the text (ex. 18) and prove that the work of weathermen is very important.

21 Let's discuss the work of weathermen. Think and answer the questions. Ex. 18 can help you.

1. Are weather forecasts important for people? People of what professions are interested in weather forecasts? Why?
2. How often can people listen to daily weather forecasts? Can they get this information only on radio and TV?
3. When and where do weathermen usually collect information about weather?
4. What is the usual weather if a barometer shows high pressure in summer? in winter?
5. Do the members of your family usually listen to weather forecasts or watch them on television?
6. Have you ever got into trouble because of a wrong weather forecast? Can you remember how it happened?

22 Play the part of a weatherman and tell TV viewers what weather they will have tomorrow.

23 Make up dialogues about the weather on a *rainy* (*sunny*, *cold*, *hot*, *frosty*, *warm*, *autumn*, *spring*) day and act them out.

LET US WRITE

24 You know that the weather in Britain is very changeable. Describe the weather in London on each day of last week.

EXAMPLE: It was snowy on Sunday.

Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday,
 Thursday, Friday, Saturday



-5°



+20°



wind

25 Describe in 5–7 sentences a typical day in spring, summer, autumn and winter.

26 Express the same in English.

a) I. 1. Солнечно. Дождя нет. 2. Холодно. Идёт снег.
3. Облачно. Дует холодный ветер. 4. Морозно, но светит солнце. 5. Идёт дождь. Туманно. Сыро. 6. Идёт снег? — Нет, на улице ясно.

II. 1. Вчера было тепло, хотя шёл дождь. 2. В прошлую среду было ветreno, но ясно. Светило солнце. 3. Вчера вечером дул сильный ветер и было холодно. 4. Вчера утром не было солнца. 5. Три дня тому назад был лёгкий туман (дымка), но было тепло. 6. На прошлой неделе шёл снег. Морозило.

b) Наступила осень. Дни стали короче. Много облачных, ненастных дней с ливнями. А совсем недавно было тепло и сухо, светило солнце и дни были ясными. В прошлое воскресенье я гулял по лесу и слушал пение птиц. А сейчас я сижу за письменным столом и делаю уроки. Но я люблю осень и люблю школу. В этом году я буду опять учить английский язык.

27 Look at the words again and get ready to write a spelling quiz on them.



a rainbow, a rainstorm, a barometer, a shower, a weatherman, a forecast, to forecast, to expect, daily, calm, misty, changeable

LET US LISTEN AND DISCUSS

28 Listen to the tape, 6, and say why Tom asked his father about the rain on the road. What did his father answer him?

29 Who said the following?

1. “Dry and warm in the morning with possible showers in the afternoon.”
2. “It isn’t very nice, is it?”

3. "It rains and ... the grass grows for the cows and the sheep."

4. "Then why does it rain on the road, too?"

30 Describe the weather on the day of Tom and his father's walk.

UNIT 2 CLIMATE



WEATHER AND
WEATHER FORECAST



CLIMATIC
CHANGES



SEASONS

LET US REVIEW

1 Put the following words in two groups: a) fine weather; b) nasty weather.

cloudy, rainy, misty, snowy, foggy, sunny, hot, wet, changeable, cold, dull,¹ calm, stormy, windy, bright, clear, warm, cool

2 Describe an ideal day for:

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1) picnicking; | 5) skiing or skating; |
| 2) an excursion about the city; | 6) playing outdoors; |
| 3) a visit to a museum; | 7) preparing for exams; |
| 4) seeing the New Year in; | 8) a sea voyage. |

3 Give it a name. Unit 1, ex. 12, ex. 13 can help you.

1) An instrument that helps to find out what the weather will be like; 2) a half circle² of bright colours that you see

¹ dull [dʌl] — зд. пасмурный

² half circle [,ha:f 'sɜ:kł] — полукруг

in the sky when rain and sun come together; 3) happening every day; 4) to say what you think the weather will be like; 5) a thin cloud near the ground; when you have it you cannot see very far; 6) quiet, with no wind; 7) changing very often; 8) a quick fall of very heavy rain; 9) to think that something will happen; 10) a person who makes weather forecasts at regular times.

- 4** Work in pairs, pretend that you live in different places and:
 a) Ask your partner questions about the climate in the place where he or she lives. Find out:

- if the summers are very hot;
- if the winters are very cold;
- how much snow falls every winter;
- how much rain falls in each season;
- in what months or seasons the strongest winds blow;
- which of the seasons are mild;
- if the climate is mild / cold / continental / hot / severe.¹

- b) Describe the climate in the place where your partner lives.

<i>The Past Indefinite (Simple) Tense</i>			<i>The Present Perfect Tense (Resultative)</i>	
+ V+ed V ₂	? did+V	- didn't+V	+ / ? have+V ₃ has+V ₃	- haven't+V ₃ hasn't+V ₃
1. Pam ate her dinner after school. 2. Where did you buy these souvenirs? 3. We didn't play tennis yesterday as it was raining.			1. Jeff has already eaten his dinner. 2. Have you bought all the souvenirs yet ? 3. No, Mum, I haven't played the song yet .	

¹ severe [sɪ'ver] — суровый

5 Pretend you are a geography teacher and: a) Ask your class the following questions.

1. What do you know about the climate of Moscow and other parts of Russia? of London and other parts of Britain?
2. What can you say about the climate in Africa?
3. What kind of climate do you prefer?
4. Why do you think most people prefer to live in places with a mild climate?
5. Why can it be hard for people to move from one part of the world to another?

b) Think of some more questions that you could ask your class.

6 Complete the dialogues, use *present perfect* or *past simple*.

I

Steve: I never (*be*) to Russia.

Barbara: I (*live*) in Moscow for a month last year.

Steve: You ever (*be*) to St. Petersburg?

Barbara: No, but a friend of mine (*stay*) there for a week two years ago. He (*enjoy*) it very much.

II

Kate: I just (*see*) Mr Jackson. He is angry because you (*not finish*) your translation yet.

Ian [iən]: But I (*explain*) everything only an hour ago. I (*lose*) my dictionary and (*not find*) it yet.

Kate: I never (*do*) a written translation before. Is it difficult?

Ian: I (*not write*) many. In fact, I only (*write*) two and they (*be*) rather easy.

LET US READ AND LEARN

7 a) Read the words in transcription.

[ʃauə], [ɪk'spekt], ['tseindʒəbl], ['misti], ['reɪnbəʊ], ['fɔ:kə:st],
[bə'rɒmɪtə], [ka:m], ['reinstɔ:m], ['deɪli].

b) Listen to the tape, 7, and check your reading.

The Present Perfect Tense (Durative)

for, since

have/has V₃

I **have known** Ann for 5 years.

He **has had** the bike since his father bought it.

haven't/hasn't V₃

We **haven't been** here since Monday.

She **hasn't seen** Mary for a long time.

Have/Has ... V₃?

Have they **lived** here for 3 years?

Has Tom **known** Bill since last year?

The Present Perfect Continuous Tense



have/has been Ving

I **have been learning** English for 5 years.

He **has been writing** a letter since he came home.

haven't/hasn't been Ving?

They **haven't been sleeping** since 5.

She **hasn't been working** since 2 o'clock.



Have/Has ... been Ving?

Have they **been playing** football for an hour?

Has he **been reading** "Alice in Wonderland" long?

- 8 Say why these people are tired and what they have done.

EXAMPLE: Nick is tired because he **has been playing tennis** for three hours (since two o'clock) and **has won** two games.

1. Sam — to ride a bike for... — to ride 3 miles.
2. Mary — to do the shopping since... — to buy a lot of food.
3. Bill — to read detective stories for... — to read 2 stories.
4. Sally — to make pancakes since... — to make 50 big

pancakes. 5. Roy — to watch videos for... — to see 2 films. 6. Jack — to train since... — to throw the ball 100 metres. 7. Sarah — to wash up for... — to break a few plates. 8. The children — to plant flowers since... — to plant a lot of primroses.

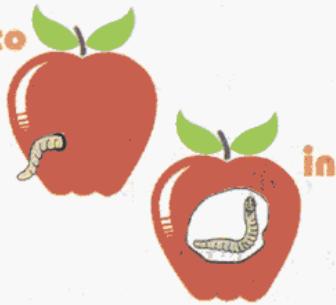
9 Express the same in English.

1. — Привет, Джек. Сколько времени ты уже здесь? — Три дня. Я приехал сюда в прошлый четверг. 2. — Когда и где ты купила это платье? — Я купила его в Москве, но не помню, в каком магазине. Оно у меня уже полгода. 3. — Дождь идёт с утра. Он начался в девять и до сих пор не перестал. — Как жаль! 4. — Мы ждём Виктора 15 минут. Куда он ушёл? Матч уже начался. — Не волнуйся. Я только что его видел. Он покупал мороженое минуту тому назад. 5. — Как давно ты знаешь г-на Джонса? — Я знаю его три года. Он преподает мне английский язык с 2002 года.

FOCUS

in/into

in / into



out (of)

out (of)



to be in
to stay in
to get in

to breathe in
to come in
to eat in

to be out
to stay out
to get out

to breathe out
to come out
to eat out

10 Fill in either *in* or *out* to complete the sentences.

1. Is your father ...? — No, he is 2. My elder brother got ... the car and drove away. 3. When you breathe

..., you take a breath of air into your lungs. 4. If you stay ..., you remain at home. If you stay ..., you remain away from home. 5. She breathed ... through her lips to cool the hot tea. 6. Mrs Smith never eats She always has her meals at home. 7. A car stopped and a tall man got

11 a) Read and guess what the underlined words mean.

1. Climatic [klai'mætɪk] changes can be dangerous for people.
2. Plants can't live without water and sunshine ['sʌnsain].
3. We took the plants out into the garden. The effect [ɪ'fekt] was just wonderful: in a few days they looked green and fresh again.
4. Sunlight is the light from the sun.

b) Look these words up to make sure that you have guessed right.

12 Read the words, look them up and then study the word combinations and sentences to know how to use them.

an **influence** ['infljuəns] (*n*): Television has a strong influence on people. We don't know everything about the influence of climate on people.

to **influence** (*v*): I'd like to know what influenced his decision.

human ['hju:mən] (*adj*): human voices, human nature. To make mistakes is human. He didn't expect to hear human voices in the old house.

a **human** (*n*): Humans have been exploring the planet for thousands of years. Could a computer ever beat¹ a human at chess?

to **ruin** ['ru:n] (*v*): to ruin buildings, to ruin the harvest. The storm ruined our picnic. Why are you ruining your health? A lot of cities were ruined during the war.

a **greenhouse** ['grænhaʊs] (*n*): a greenhouse of glass. A greenhouse is a building with glass walls and roof where plants grow. My mother usually grows tomatoes in the greenhouse.

¹ to beat [bit] — бить, побить

the greenhouse effect: The greenhouse effect is the problem of a rise in temperature in the earth's atmosphere.
heat [hit] (*n*): The unusual heat in June killed all my lilies.
to produce [prə'dju:s] (*v*): to produce goods. What does the farm produce?

huge [hju:dʒ] (*adj*): a huge animal, a man of huge strength. The huge animals that once lived on the earth died many centuries ago.

a coast [kəʊst] (*n*): the coast of the sea. There are many towns on the coast of the Black Sea.

fragile ['frædʒail] (*adj*): fragile flowers, fragile health, fragile happiness. Fragile things break easily. Is glass very fragile? A fragile lady appeared on the screen.

FOCUS

to influence sb/sth

1. His speech greatly influenced the people.
2. The book influenced his choice of a future profession.
3. Computers have influenced the world of science a lot.

to have an influence on sb/sth

1. His speech had a great influence on the people.
2. The book had a strong influence on his choice of a future profession.
3. Computers have had a great influence on the world of science.

13 Name three:

- people who have influence on you
- things that can ruin the harvest
- vegetables that we usually grow in greenhouses
- things that are fragile
- towns situated on the coast
- huge things
- parts of human body
- things that we burn to warm our houses
- makes¹ of cars produced in Russia

¹ a make — марка (автомашины)

- 14** Listen to the dialogue, 8, and say which is colder: *the South Pole or the North Pole*.

AT THE ZOO

- A: Just look at that great white polar bear! Isn't it nice? I think it looks absolutely like a big soft toy.
- B: It does, doesn't it? A toy indeed! For your information it's one of the strongest animals in the world and very fierce¹.
- A: Is it? An animal with such funny button eyes and thick soft fur?
- B: Don't be silly. And speaking of the fur, though it's thick I can't understand how the polar bear can live in the coldest place of the world.
- A: This is where you're making a mistake. North only sounds colder than South.
- B: What do you mean?
- A: Actually, the little penguins of the Antarctic live in a colder climate than the bears of the Arctic where the temperature is a few degrees higher.



- 15** Learn the dialogue of ex. 14 by heart and act it out. Don't forget to change over.

LET US READ

- 16** Read the text and say if Man can influence the climate.

CLIMATE

Climate is the weather a certain place has over a long period of time. Climate has a very important influence on plants, animals and humans and is different in different parts of the world.

¹ fierce [fɪəs] — свирепый

Russia is the largest country of the world. It lies on a huge territory from the coast of the Pacific Ocean to the centre of Europe and its climate in the north, south, east and west is different. In the west for example, the climate is usually mild and wet. At the same time the coldest place on the planet is in the north of Siberia [saɪ'bɪəriə], while in the south of Russia there is a lot of sunshine and the heat in summer can be really terrible. Summer and winter temperatures are very different in Moscow, Omsk or Krasnoyarsk, in Volgograd or Rostov. In the Arctic the winter temperatures are very low. The taiga ['taɪgə] zone has long hard winters and short summers. Between the Black and Caspian seas it is very hot in summer.

9. But recently the climate has changed a lot in our country, especially in its European part. Some scientists think the world is becoming hotter. If you compare Moscow's winter and summer temperatures at the beginning of the century and at its end you will see that the climate has really changed. Winters have become warmer. Sometimes there is little snow in January, and there were winters when it rained (not snowed!) on the New Year's Eve.

Many people say that it is so because of the greenhouse effect. Have you ever heard about it? It works like this: sunlight gives us heat. Some of the heat warms the atmosphere, and some of the heat goes back into space. Nowadays the air surrounding the earth has become much warmer because the heat can't go back into space. That's why winter and summer temperatures in many places have become higher.

During the last 100 years people have produced a lot of carbon dioxide.¹ This gas in the atmosphere works like glass in a greenhouse. It lets heat get in, but it doesn't let much heat get out. So the atmosphere becomes warmer.

Where does the carbon dioxide come from? People and animals breathe in oxygen,² and breathe out carbon dioxide. We produce carbon dioxide when we burn things. Trees

¹ carbon dioxide ['ka:bən daɪ'ɔksaɪd] — углекислый газ (двуокись углерода)

² oxygen ['oksɪdʒən] — кислород

take this gas from the air, and produce oxygen. But in the last few years, people have cut down and burnt big areas of rainforest.¹ This means there are fewer trees, and, of course, more carbon dioxide!

So, the climate in different parts of the world changes a little from year to year. These changes can be dangerous for our fragile planet which needs protection. Earth is millions of years old, much older than the humans. We know many of its secrets. Yet there is still much to learn. ☺

17 Look through the text again and answer the questions.

1. What is climate?
2. Is the climate always the same in this or that part of the world? Does it change?
3. What can you say about the climate in Russia?
4. What do you know about the greenhouse effect?
5. Why doesn't all the heat go back into space? Why does the atmosphere become warmer?
6. How can the greenhouse effect influence the climate on the planet in future?
7. Do you think our planet needs protection? Why?

18 Look through the text again to complete the sentences.

1. Climate is the weather a certain place has over...
2. Climate has a very important influence on...
3. At the same time the coldest place on the planet...
4. Some of the heat warms the atmosphere, and some of the heat...
5. People and animals breathe in oxygen and...
6. Trees take carbon dioxide from the air, and...

LET US TALK



19 Develop the idea of each item in this outline.² Ex. 16 can help you.

- The greenhouse effect.
- Possible results of the greenhouse effect.

¹ a rainforest — тропический лес

² outline — план

- The role of plants on the planet.
- Climatic changes and their effects.
- Reasons for climatic changes.

20 Many people say that the climate nowadays is going “crazy”. These are some facts proving it.

Read them through and give at least three reasons why such crazy happenings are bad for people and the planet.

1. The summers of 1972 and 2003 in Moscow were so hot that the forests around the capital caught fire, smoke filled the city and stayed for several days.
2. In January 1987 snow fell on the gondolas of Venice¹ and the usually sunny coasts of France.
3. In 1987, 1990 and 2003 European countries had terrible storms. The strong winds ruined a lot of forest, millions of trees.

21 Some people say that those who live in a cold climate differ from those who live in hot countries. Do you believe in it? If you do, say in what way they can be different. Think of their appearance and their habits, likes and dislikes.

eat more — eat less

eat more spices — eat less spices

are more active — are more quiet

are more sensible² — are less sensible

are reserved³ — are not reserved

are fond of bright colours — dislike very bright colours

LET US WRITE

22 Spell the transcribed words of ex. 7.

23 Do ex. 6, ex. 8, ex. 9 in writing.

¹ Venice ['venis] — Венеция

² sensible ['sensibl] — рассудительный

³ reserved [ri'zɜ:vɪd] — сдержанний

24 Write what people have already done and what they haven't done yet.

EXAMPLE: Steve has already bought a new bike but he hasn't ridden on it yet.

	already	not yet
1. Steve	to buy a bike	to ride a bike
2. Jane and Pat	to wash the dishes	to dry them
3. Ian	to take the books from the library	to read the books
4. Jeff and Paul	to build a small cottage	to paint it
5. Chris	to write a short story	to type it up
6. Monica and Barbara	to see the famous actress	to speak to her
7. Fred	to cook breakfast	to have it

25 Pete and his parents came to London from Moscow a week ago (on the 12th of September). Write sentences about Pete. Use *present perfect* and *present perfect continuous*.

EXAMPLE: Pete has been shopping for a few days. He has bought a lot of souvenirs.

- 1. To stay at a hotel.
- 2. To shop for a few days.
- 3. To live in London since September.
- 4. To be in London for a week.
- 5. To travel about the city.
- 6. To see a lot of interesting places.
- 7. To visit the Tower.
- 8. To have a boat trip on the Thames.
- 9. To buy a lot of souvenirs.
- 10. To meet a lot of English people.
- 11. To walk the streets of London.
- 12. To take pictures of London.

26 Express the same in English.

a) 1. Анна живет в Лондоне с 1985 года. Она работает в банке. Она работает там три года. 2. Билл всегда хотел побывать в Брайтоне. Он прочитал много книг об этом курорте (resort). 3. — Семья Браунов еще не выстроила

свой новый дом. — Сколько времени они его строят? — Они строят его уже два года. 4. — Я вас целую вечность не видела. Где вы были? Где вы прятались? — Я пишу книгу о своих путешествиях. Пишу ее 1,5 месяца, поэтому живу на даче с мая.

b) 1. — Какая сегодня погода в Лос-Анджелесе? — Солнечно и тепло. Прекрасный день, чтобы поехать на побережье, поплавать и позагорать. 2. — Сколько времени идёт дождь? — Дождь идёт три дня. На улице ветрено, сыро и облачно. У нас осенняя погода. 3. — Какая была погода вчера в Москве? — Шёл снег, было 10 градусов ниже нуля, но было солнечно.

c) 1. Стекло очень хрупкое. 2. Мы сожгли старые листья в саду. 3. Жара имеет (оказывает) пагубное (плохое) влияние на людей. 4. Влияние учителей на учеников велико. 5. Ты когда-нибудь бывал в оранжерее? 6. Ты что-нибудь слышал о «парниковом эффекте»? 7. Что производит эта фабрика? 8. В Северной Африке более 4000 часов солнечного света каждый год. 9. На побережье достаточно прохладно, правда? 10. Какое влияние имеют климатические изменения на людей?

27 Look at the words again and get ready to write a spelling quiz on them.



climatic, sunlight, sunshine, an effect, an influence, a human, to ruin, a greenhouse, heat, to produce, huge, a coast, fragile

LET US LISTEN AND DISCUSS

28 Listen to the tape, 10, and put these sentences in the right order.

1. Renato moved to England and bought a restaurant in London.
2. Mr Jenkins had lunch in Renato's restaurant.
3. Renato was born in Italy and lived there for thirty-two years.

4. Mr Jenkins told his wife about his lunch at Renato's restaurant.
5. Renato decided to put some of the tables out into the street.
6. Renato couldn't forget Italy and his home town.

29 Imagine that you are Mr Jenkins. Tell your wife about your lunch at Renato's restaurant and describe a) the people that were having lunch at the same time with you; b) the food they were eating; c) the clothes they were wearing.

30 Think and say why it is important to know the climate of the place where you are going.

UNIT 3 THE NATURAL WORLD



WEATHER AND CLIMATE



PLANTS AND ANIMALS



FREE TIME



CLOTHES



PETS



HOBBIES

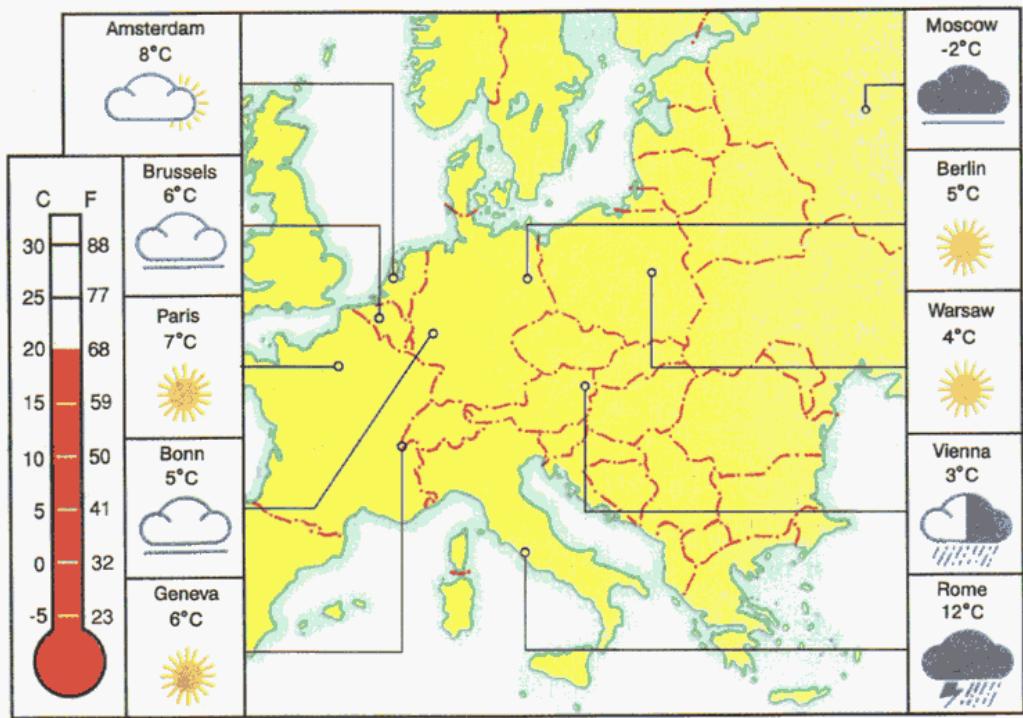
LET US REVIEW

1 Work in pairs. Look at the weathermap and the Climate Chart, then ask and answer questions on the weather and climate in different countries and cities.

EXAMPLE:

— What is the weather like in Rome? — It is stormy. The temperature is +12 °C. — What is the climate like in Italy? — In summer it's generally hot, with a lot of sunshine. In winter it's mild and wet. The average¹ summer temperature is +24 °C. The average winter temperature is +6 °C.

¹ average ['ævərɪdʒ] — средний



Climate Chart

Average Temperature

<i>Country</i>	<i>Summer</i>	<i>Winter</i>
1. Austria	+15°; +18°;	-1°; -4°
2. Belgium	+14°; +18°;	+3°; -1°
3. France	+16°; +24°;	+1°; +10°
4. Germany	+16°; +19°;	0°; -3°
5. Holland	+18°; +19°;	+1°; +3°
6. Italy	+20°; +28°;	0°; +12°
7. Poland	+16°; +19°;	-1°; -3°
8. Russia	+1°; +25°;	-1°; -50°

Austria [ˈɒstriə] — Австрия; Belgium [ˈbeldʒəm] — Бельгия;
 Holland [ˈhɒlənd] — Голландия; Warsaw [ˈwɔ:sɔ:] — Варшава;
 France [frɑ:n̩s] — Франция

2 What types of weather are good and bad for doing these things?

EXAMPLE: Skiing. It's bad to have mild and warm weather when snow melts. It's good to ski on cold, clear days.

1. Planting flowers in the garden.
2. Making a snowman.
3. Camping out in a tent.
4. Doing the sights of a city.
5. Going out in a small boat.
6. Skating.
7. Taking your little brother or sister out to the zoo.
8. Gathering harvest.

3 On a December morning two suitcases which belong to Mr White and Mr Black fell open at the airport and their things got mixed.¹ Mr Black is going to India and Mr White is going to Norway. Both of the passengers are going to celebrate Christmas with their families. Help them to collect their things.

a) Make a list of things for each man.

Mr White

Mr Black



b) Explain your choice.

EXAMPLE: The trousers belong to Mr Black because they are light summer trousers, and the skiing cap belongs to Mr White because it is the right time for skiing in Norway.

¹ got mixed — перемешались

4 Look at the table on p. 31 and describe the typical winter/summer weather in:

- 1) the place where you live;
- 2) London;
- 3) Florida (USA);
- 4) the North Pole;
- 5) the Crimea;
- 6) South America.

EXAMPLE: It is seldom foggy in Moscow in summer.

It's	always	clear
	generally	hot/cold	
	usually	cloudy	
	often	rainy/sunny	
	sometimes	nasty	
	occasionally	windy	
	seldom	wet/dry	
	hardly ever	cool	

5 Describe the clothes you prefer to wear in different weather.

EXAMPLE: When it is freezing I prefer to put on (wear) an anorak,¹ a warm scarf, a pair of trousers, a sweater and winter boots.

FOCUS

Pronouns

<i>Personal</i>		<i>Possessive</i>		<i>Reflexive</i>
I	me	my	mine	myself
you	you	your	yours	yourself
he	him	his	his	himself
she	her	her	hers	herself
it	it	its	its	itself
we	us	our	ours	ourselves
you	you	your	yours	yourselves
they	them	their	theirs	themselves

¹ an anorak ['ænəræk] — теплая куртка с капюшоном

6 Choose the right form of the possessive and personal pronouns and complete the sentences.

EXAMPLE: I gave him my bicycle and he gave me his.

1. She gave me ____ phone number and I ____ .
2. They gave you ____ car and ____ .
3. He gave them ____ documents and ____ .
4. We gave her ____ .
5. You gave us ____ games and ____ .

7 Express the same in Russian.

1. Don't hurt yourself.
2. She looked at herself in the mirror.
3. They chose the present themselves.
4. I'm not angry with you, I'm angry with myself.
5. Did you enjoy yourselves at the party?
6. Bye-bye, take care of yourself.
7. It was so hot that we decided not to dry ourselves after the swim.
8. The cat cut itself on a piece of glass.
9. I was asked to speak about myself.
10. Don't pay for me I'll pay for myself.

The Passive Voice

be + V₃

Present Indefinite Passive

am/is/are + V₃

Potatoes are grown in many countries.

Is cream made from milk?

Past Indefinite Passive

was/were + V₃

That photo was taken yesterday.

The palace was not built two centuries ago.

8 Change the sentences to use passive structures.

EXAMPLE: They never buy such toys for very young children.
Such toys are never bought for very young children.

1. They forecast weather every day.
2. Do people speak English all over the world?
3. Everybody brings textbooks to the lesson.
4. We didn't expect rain this week.
5. They don't grow cabbages in front of the house.
6. Parents often read books to their children at bedtime.
7. People keep animals in cages. Isn't it awful!
8. Good pupils never do lessons late at night.

9 Do you know this? If not, try to find it out (ask grown-ups or consult dictionaries) and say:

- where coffee is grown;
- when Moscow was founded;
- what butter is made from;
- in what country the best tulips are grown;
- in what city the Lada cars are produced;
- what warm winter sweaters are usually made of;
- when A. S. Pushkin was born;
- what pets are generally kept in cages;
- what two official languages are spoken in Canada;
- when the battle of Borodino was fought.

10 Make a list of traditional hobbies in Russia. Compare it with the list of traditional British hobbies. What are the most/least¹ popular hobbies in both countries, in your opinion?

Russian Hobbies

British Hobbies

- sailing
doing crosswords
walking
listening to music
taking photographs
playing computer games



¹ least [list] — наименее

windsurfing¹
horse riding
reading
eating in restaurants
going to the cinema
playing football
playing board games (cards, chess, etc.)
fishing
watching videos



11 Work in pairs. Look at the list of hobbies in ex. 10 and tell your partner what you like/dislike doing. Ask questions about your partner's hobbies.

EXAMPLE: — I don't like going to the cinema but I like reading very much. — Oh, really? What do you read? — I read a lot of detective stories.

12 Keeping pets at home is a popular hobby. Answer these questions about pets and pet keeping.

1. Do you think that keeping pets is a good idea?
2. What pets are generally kept in town? in the country?
3. What are unusual (exotic) pets to keep? What is the most unusual pet you have heard of?
4. What problems do people face if they keep pets?
5. Why do people keep pets nowadays?
6. Have you ever had a pet? What was it? Are you keeping a pet now? What is it and what is it like?

¹ windsurfing ['wind,sɜ:fɪŋ] — виндсёрфинг

- 13** This is what Steven Howard, a boy from Newcastle, wrote about his dog. Look through it and describe your own pet or the pet you would like to have some day.

MY DOG DUKE

My dog is called Duke and he is a long-haired German shepherd dog¹. He is the biggest dog in my street and every time the postman or someone passes by he barks his head off² and nearly gives them a heart attack. Lots of people are afraid to go into my house because he's aggressive. But he is a lovely dog when you get to know him. He loves playing with balls and with my pet duck, George.



Steven Howard

- 14** a) Read the words in transcription.

[ˈsʌnsain], [ɪ'fekt], ['sənlait], [klar'mætɪk], ['ɪnfluəns], ['hju:mən], [hi:t], ['ru:in], [prə'dju:s], [hju:dʒ], [kəʊst], ['frædʒail], ['grɪ:nhaʊs].

- b) Listen to the tape, 11, and check your reading.

LET US READ AND LEARN

FOCUS

Future Indefinite Passive

shall/will be + V₃

The letter **will be posted** tomorrow.

The room **will be cleaned** soon.

The papers **won't be burnt**.

They **won't be expected** before the end of this week.
Shall I be asked any questions?

Will the weather be forecast for this weekend?

¹ a shepherd ['sepəd] dog — овчарка

² to bark one's head off — лаять до одури, заливаться лаем

- 15** a) Look at the pages from Caroline's diary and say what will be done on each day of the week.

EXAMPLE: Food will be bought on Monday.



- b) You see how busy Caroline is going to be this coming week. She won't be able to do a lot of things that she has to do. Think of 5 things that won't be done by Caroline.

EXAMPLE: The books won't be returned to the library.

1. Caroline has to return the books to the library.
2. Caroline has to clean the flat.
3. Caroline has to visit her granny.
4. Caroline has to write a story for the Young Writers' Competition.
5. Caroline has to plant some new flowers in her garden.

- c) Work in pairs and ask each other what things will and won't be done in your family at the coming weekend.

EXAMPLE: — Will father's car be washed? — No, it won't. And will a pie be cooked for the party? — It certainly will.

Mary **must** finish her story.
You **have to** do it.
I **can** buy only two ices.

You **should** feed the dog.
We **ought** to visit Granny.

You **must not** make this
mistake again.

You **don't have to** cook din-
ner today.

The secretary **can't** type all
the documents.

You **shouldn't** pay the bill
now.

They **oughtn't** to beat the
dog.

The story **must** be finished.
It **has to** be done.
Only two ices **can** be
bought.

The dog **should** be fed.
Granny **ought** to be visited.

This mistake **must not** be
made again.

Dinner **doesn't have to** be
cooked today.

All the documents **can't** be
typed.

The bill **shouldn't** be **paid**
now.

The dog **oughtn't** to be
beaten.

Must I **do** this work now?

Do we **have to** tell the
truth?

Can they **sell** their old car?

Should people **tell** lies?

Ought I **to answer** this
question?

Must this work **be done**
now?

Does the truth **have to be**
told?

Can their old car **be sold**?

Should lies **be told**?

Ought this question **to be**
answered?

16 Make the sentences complete. Use the table.

EXAMPLE: The story **ought** to be written as soon as possible.

The story
The cat
The plants
The gallery
The address
The telegram

must	be fed	...
ought to	be told	...
has to	be sent	...
should	be visited	...
can	be watered	...
	be found out	...

17 Express the same in English.

- a) 1. Эти новости обсудят после уроков. 2. Окна вымоют в конце месяца. 3. Делегацию встретят завтра. 4. Им скажут о нашем приезде. 5. Фильм посмотрят. 6. Котятам дадут молока. 7. Эти картины купят для городского музея. 8. Этих учеников спросят на следующем уроке.
- b) 1. Стадион должен быть построен в этом году. 2. Работа может быть сделана через три дня. 3. Животных необходимо защищать. 4. Эти новые песни должны быть исполнены (спеты) на концерте. 5. Это сражение может быть выиграно. 6. Растения придется полить. 7. Больного мальчика необходимо навестить. 8. Старые газеты придется сжечь.

18 a) Read and guess what the underlined words mean.

1. Tortoises, snakes and crocodiles are reptiles ['reptailz].
2. Savannas [sə'venəz] are open grass-covered lands in warm countries.

b) Look these words up to make sure that you have guessed right.

19 Read the words, look them up and study the word combinations and sentences to know how to use them.

extinct [ɪk'stɪŋkt] (*adj*): Dodoes¹ are extinct birds. Dinosaurs² are extinct animals.

a **pigeon** ['pɪdʒɪn] (*n*): Tourists liked to feed pigeons in Trafalgar Square.

to endanger [ɪn'deindʒə] (*v*): to endanger animals, to endanger one's life. Nowadays tigers have become endangered animals: their number is so small, that they can easily die out.

a **species** ['spi:zɪz] (*pl species*) (*n*): a species of flowers, a species of animals. What species of plants can you see in the Botanical Garden? The Black Tulip is an unusual species of tulips.

¹ a dodo ['dəʊdəʊ] — птица додо (*вымерший вид*)

² a dinosaur ['dainəsɔ:] — динозавр (*вымершее животное*)

- a insect** ['insekt] (*n*): an unusual insect. Insects usually have six legs, sometimes even more.
- a mammal** ['mæməl] (*n*): Dogs are mammals. Mammals are animals that feed their young with milk.
- to destroy** [dɪ'strɔɪ] (*v*): to destroy an army, to destroy a town, to destroy hopes. Fires often destroy forests. Mr Fox's house was destroyed and so he and his family had no place to live.
- a habitat** ['hæbɪtæt] (*n*): a habitat of plants, a habitat of animals. When we speak about a habitat we mean a place where a certain animal or plant is usually found.
- cardboard** ['kɑ:dbo:d] (*n*): made of cardboard, a cardboard box. We used cardboard boxes to carry our books.
- to damage** ['dæmɪdʒ] (*v*): to be damaged by fire. The fire badly damaged the house. The house was so badly damaged that we had to build a new one.
- to include** [ɪn'klu:d] (*v*): to include on the list, to be included. The group of twenty includes one girl. I want to go on the school trip too. Did you include me on the list? The trip is 300 dollars, the cost of the meals included.
- to cure** [kjʊə] (*v*): to cure a patient, to cure an illness, to cure a headache. Some illnesses are very difficult to cure. I hope he will soon be cured.
- a creature** ['kri:tʃə] (*n*): a lovely creature, a poor creature, a kind creature. Look at the little foxes. Aren't they funny creatures?

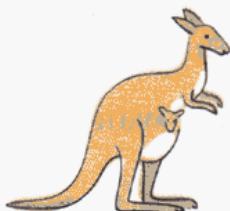


Fill in the suitable words to complete the text. Ex. 19 can help you.

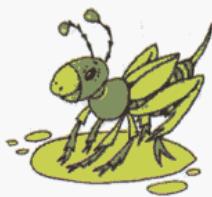
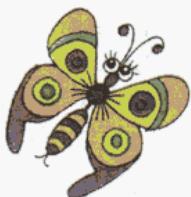
AT THE ZOO



Hello, everybody! Welcome to our new and wonderful zoo full of different birds, m..., r..., and i.... Their list in... many sp... living on our planet. I'm sure you won't be sorry that you've come because I'm going to show you something that will make you gasp.¹ Here, on your



¹ to gasp [ga:sp] — открывать рот от изумления



left there are our new arrivals. Their h... is Australia. Some of these animals are very rare,¹ almost ex... . It means that they are dying out because Man had de... their homes. You know that a lot of forests are dam..., so these cr... are en... . If we, humans, are as careless in future as we have been, very soon we'll be able to see these animals only at the zoo, or at the natural history museums. That will be much worse for the reason that there they won't be alive, but made of car..., paper, wood and fur.

21 Listen to the poem "Dogs", 12, and learn it by heart.

DOGS

(after Ogden Nash)

The dog is man's best friend.
He has a tail on one end.
Up in front he has teeth.
And four legs underneath.
Dogs like to bark.
They like it best after dark.
A dog that is indoors
Wants to be outdoors.
But let him out — and what then?
He wants to be in again.

Dogs cheer up people who are frowning²
And rescue³ people who are drowning.⁴
Dogs in the country have fun.
They run and run and run.
But in the city this species
Is walked around on leashes.⁵
Dogs are friendly, loyal and honest.
Of all the pets I like them most.

¹ rare [reə] — редкий

² to frown [frəʊn] — хмуриться

³ to rescue ['reskju:] — спасать

⁴ to drown [draʊn] — тонуть

⁵ a leash [li:ʃ] — поводок

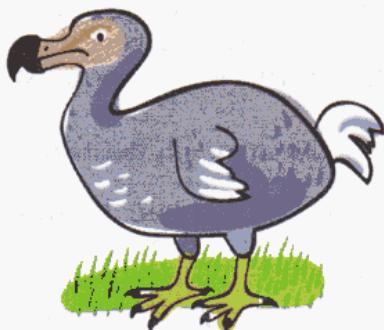
LET US READ

22 Read the text and say why many species of animals and plants are endangered.

NATURAL WORLD IN DANGER

You have never seen a dodo. Your friends and teachers have never seen a dodo. Your grandparents never saw a dodo. The last of these large birds that couldn't fly died many years ago. Now it is extinct. We even say "as dead as a dodo", which means "finished". Your great-grandparents may just have seen a passenger pigeon:¹ the last one died in 1914. A lot more endangered species — fish, reptiles, insects, birds, mammals — may disappear before you have children. The reason is that Man kills animals and destroys their habitats.

13. It is not just animals that are in danger. So are plants. The world had over nine million sq.² km of forests. This is a lot of trees, and also a lot of different species of trees. But they are disappearing fast. Every day we use paper and cardboard, both made from wood. We use different kinds of wood in furniture and in other ways. Every year over 100 000 sq. km of forests are cleared for different uses, and a lot of forests are so badly damaged that they will hardly be able to recover. If we go on like this, by the time you are as old as your grandparents are now all the forests on earth can be destroyed. This includes rainforests in South America, Africa and Asia. The huge forests help to control the world's weather and to produce much of the oxygen in the air. There are many illnesses which



¹ Your great-grandparents may just have seen a passenger pigeon ... — Твои прадедушка и прабабушка, возможно, видели странствующего голубя...

² sq. = square [skweə] — квадратный

we still cannot cure. There are old ones like cancer¹ and new ones like AIDS.² It may be that the medicines we need will be discovered in wild plants in savannas, deserts or rainforests. If we destroy these places, we will never find the cure.

So you see that it is not just children who need a healthy space to live and grow. If we want our lives to be healthy and interesting, a lot of other creatures and plants need growing space too. ☺

23 Look through the text again and answer these questions.

1. Have people living in the 20th century ever seen a dodo?
2. What is a dodo? Could you call it an extinct species?
3. What endangered species of plants and animals can you remember?
4. Why are forests on the planet disappearing fast?
5. How does this fact influence the life of people, animals and plants?
6. Why are rainforests so important to the life on the earth?
7. How can wild plants in savannas, deserts and rainforests help to cure people?
8. What should be remembered if we want to have a healthy life in future?

24 Remember the beginnings of these sentences, if necessary look through the text again.

1. ... never saw a dodo.
2. ... which means “finished”.
3. ... died many years ago.
4. ... the last one died in 1914.
5. ... both made from wood.
6. ... and to produce much of the oxygen in the air.
7. ... new ones like AIDS.
8. ... we will never find the cure.
9. ... a lot of other creatures and plants need growing space too.

¹ cancer ['kænsə] — рак (болезнь)

² AIDS [eɪdz] (acquired immune deficiency syndrome) — СПИД (синдром приобретенного иммунодефицита)

25 These are four good reasons why we must protect wildlife. Develop these ideas.

1. Forests (especially rainforests) control the world's weather.
2. Plants produce much of the oxygen in the air which people need for breathing.
3. Wild plants can help to produce some medicines to cure dangerous diseases.
4. A lot of species of plants and animals are disappearing fast and can become extinct very soon.

LET US TALK

26 Imagine you are giving a talk at the Ecology Class describing the situation in the place where you live. Make a plan of your talk and speak on the following.

1. Changes in the climate, in the weather.
2. Reasons for these changes.
3. Disappearing and rare plants (birds, animals).
4. The state of the forests, rivers and lakes in your region.

27 Use the plan of ex. 26 and say what the text "Natural World in Danger" is about in 5–10 sentences.

28 This is what Stephanie, a girl from Cardiff aged 12, wrote about the beauty of the world. Read the paragraph artistically and say how you could prove that our planet is a wonderful place to live on.

I don't normally get up early but today was different. I woke up to the sound of music but not just any music. It was the sound of birds singing like a big orchestra ['ɔ:kistrə]. I got out of bed and opened the curtains to look out of the window. I stood in a daze.¹ The bird flew from tree to tree and from branch to branch. It was a beautiful morning. The sun was shining through the trees and on the grass making them look like gold. The sky had the shade² of blue that you can see only in summer even though it was spring. What a lovely way to wake up in the morning.

Stephanie Bolton, age 12

¹ daze [deɪz] — изумление

² shade [ʃeɪd] — зđ. оттенок

29 Speak about pets people keep.

- usual (common) pets to keep at home
- unusual pets to keep at home
- reasons why people keep pets
- difficulties you have when you keep pets
- the right and wrong ways to deal with pets

30 Speak about different hobbies people have.

- usual hobbies
- unusual hobbies
- traditional English and Russian hobbies
- hobbies in your class or/and your family
- the most interesting hobby you've heard of
- reasons why people have hobbies

LET US WRITE

31 Do ex. 6, ex. 8, ex. 10, ex. 15, ex. 17 in writing.

32 Complete the dialogues using passive structures.

EXAMPLE: — Have you posted the letters? — Not yet. They will be posted tomorrow.

- a) 1. — Have you posted the letters? —
2. — Has Nick washed the plates? — Sorry, he can't do it.
3. — I can't finish this work. — Don't worry.
4. — What do you know about the delegation from France? —
5. — When will we have new pens for the office? —

EXAMPLE: — Have you finished the letter? — Not yet, I'm sure it can be written later.

- b) 1. — Have you finished the letter? — (It can ...)
2. — Have they typed the papers? — (They must ...)
3. — Have you brought any news? — (It should ...)
4. — All these people are invited, but I don't see Mr Brown's name on the list. — (He has to ...)

5. — How often do rabbits get their food? — (They ought to ...)

33 Use reflexive pronouns to express the same in English.

1. Вчера мой младший брат порезался ножом. (with a knife)
2. Не обожгись. Не ушибись. Не порежься.
3. Она собиралась в гости (to the party) и дома внимательно смотрела на себя в зеркало.
4. Она никогда сама с собой не разговаривает.
5. У меня нет времени. Помой тарелки сам.
6. Я надеюсь, он получит удовольствие от концерта.
7. Надеюсь, вы получите удовольствие от спектакля.
8. До свидания, берегите себя и возвращайтесь скорее.
9. Он мне не нравится, потому что он думает только о себе.
10. Извини, я не могу объяснить тебе это правило: я сам его не понимаю.

34 Look at the words again and get ready to write a spelling quiz on them.



a reptile, a savanna, extinct, a pigeon, to endanger (to be endangered), a species, an insect, a mammal, to destroy (to be destroyed), a habitat, cardboard, to damage (to be damaged), to include (to be included), to cure (to be cured), a creature

LET US LISTEN AND DISCUSS

35 a) Make sure that you know these words:

rubbish [ˈrʌbɪʃ] — мусор, бытовые отходы

common [ˈkɒmən] — обычный

b) Listen to the tape, 14, and answer these questions.

1. What subject did Tom Robinson teach at school?
2. Why did Tom decide to take his class to London Zoo?
3. Where did he meet his pupils?
4. Why did Tom want to show mammals to his pupils?
5. Where did Tom take his class?
6. What was there near the cages?
7. Why didn't Tom find his pupils near

the lions' cages? 8. What were his pupils looking at? 9. What was the little mouse looking for? 10. Why do you think the children were happy and more interested in the small common mouse than in the savanna lions?

- 36 Imagine what the weather was like on the day when Tom Robinson took his class to London Zoo and describe it.
- 37 Imagine you are one of Tom's pupils and tell your friends about your visit to London Zoo.

UNIT 4

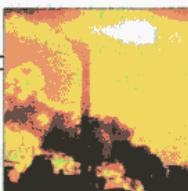
MAN AND THE NATURAL WORLD



PLANT AND
ANIMAL LIFE



TOWN AND
COUNTRY



POLLUTION¹

LET US REVIEW

- 1 Refer the words to the right group: 1) animals; 2) weather effects; 3) places.

savannas, mammals, mists, coasts, humans, insects, rainbows, rainstorms, habitats, showers, area, sunlight, pigeons, the greenhouse effect, reptiles, temperature, climatic changes

- 2 Make up true sentences of what can be done with these.

EXAMPLE: Houses can be damaged.

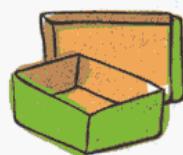
houses/damage;	sick people/cure;	village/ruin;
diseases/cure;	animals/endanger;	weather/influence;
forests/ruin;	rivers/destroy;	habitats/create;
weather/forecast;	mist/expect;	habitats/destroy.

¹ pollution [pə'lju:ʃn] — загрязнение (окружающей среды)

3 Name not less than 6 mammals, 3 insects, 3 reptiles.

4 Say what materials are *usually/often/seldom* used to make different objects.

EXAMPLE: Tables are often made of wood.



- | | |
|-------|-----------|
| wood | paper |
| metal | cardboard |
| wool | leather |
| glass | plastic |



"if / when" clauses¹



1. If they forecast rainstorms, we **will take** umbrellas with us.
2. If it **is** misty tomorrow, it **will be** difficult to drive a car.
3. When the temperature **is** below zero, you **will be able** to skate.
4. When people **can** influence the climate, we'll see a lot of changes.



1. We **will go** on a picnic if they **don't** forecast showers.
2. If he **doesn't** **read** this book, he **won't learn** a lot of facts about extinct animals.
3. Nick **will be surprised** when his friend **doesn't come** home on time.

¹ a clause [klu:z] — придаточное предложение или часть сложносочиненного предложения

5 Make up *if/when* sentences about life in the country and life in a city.

EXAMPLE: If you go to the country, you will be able to enjoy fresh air.
If you go to the country, you won't be able to visit exhibitions regularly.

1. if you go to the country — go to the theatre
2. when you stay in the country — watch wildlife
3. if you spend your holidays in the country — enjoy the beauty of the countryside
4. when you return to the city — visit museums and picture galleries
5. if you live in a city — have a lot of fun in city parks
6. if you prefer to stay in a city — take long walks in the forest

6 Play the "if" game. You may begin like this.

EXAMPLE: Pupil 1. If I go to the country, I will get up early.
Pupil 2. If I get up early, I'll see the sunrise.
Pupil 3. If I see the sunrise, I'll be happy.
Pupil 4. If I am happy, ...

1. If I visit London, ...
2. If I have a long holiday, ...
3. If I have a lot of money, ...

7 Complete the dialogue "Where Do You Want to Live?", check up your version of the dialogue with the help of the tape, 15, and then act it out. Don't forget to change over.

WHERE DO YOU WANT TO LIVE?

Dave: Paul! You know, what? My father's got a new job!
We are going to live in New York.

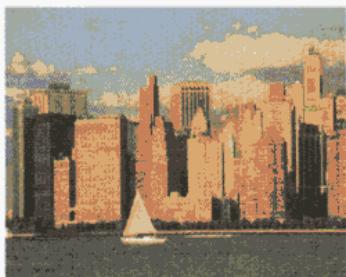
Paul: _____ ? _____ ? Have you ever lived in a big city?

Dave: _____. Have you?

Paul: Yes, I have. I lived in San Francisco with my grandparents for a few years. I didn't like it there.

Dave: _____? Were there too many people or too much noise and traffic?

Paul: _____. And I don't like crowds and pollution. There isn't enough fresh air in big cities, you know.



Dave: _____. But there are a lot of parks in New York, aren't there?

Paul: _____. But I'm sure there are a lot more cars and car parks there. I really prefer a quiet life in a small village.

3 Read the poem "He Loves the Ocean" and say where she and he would like to live: in town or in the country? Explain your choice. Then try and sing it. Choose any suitable¹ melody you like.

HE LOVES THE OCEAN

He loves the ocean.
He loves the sky.
She loves to travel.
She loves to fly.
He likes the country.
He loves the clouds.
She likes the city.
She loves the crowds.

She loves the telephone.
She loves to talk.
He loves the mountains.
He loves to walk.
She loves to travel.
She loves to fly.
He loves the ocean.
He loves the sky.

¹ suitable ['sju:təbl] — подходящий

-er/-est

big — bigger — the biggest
(species)

cold — colder — the coldest
(climate)

more/most

useful — more useful — the
most useful (insects)

dangerous — more dangerous
— the **most** dangerous
(dogs)

good — better — the best (effects)

bad — worse — the worst (place)

But: old { — elder — the eldest (brother)

{ — older — the oldest (creature)

far { — further — the furthest (argument)

{ — farther — the farthest (corner of the park)

little — less — the least (important question)

much } — more — the most (dangerous sport)

- 9 a) Divide the adjectives in three categories: 1) those which describe life in the city; 2) those which describe life in the country; 3) those which can describe life in the city and in the country.

clean, slow, dirty, healthy, friendly, dangerous, modern, big, expensive, noisy, boring, quiet, interesting, busy, beautiful

- b) Use the words above to make these sentences true and compare city and country life.

EXAMPLE: The country is cleaner than the town.

1. The streets in the city are ... than the streets in the country.
2. The air in the city is ... than the air in the country.
3. The buildings in the city are ... than in the country.
4. Nature in the city is ... than nature in the country.
5. Life in the country is ... than it is in the city.

6. It is ... to live in the city than in the country. 7. People in the country are often ... than people in the city.

10 Compare the three school reports. Remember that "A" is an excellent mark, "B" is a good mark, "C" means satisfactory, "D" means quite satisfactory¹ and "E" means not satisfactory.

EXAMPLE: In English Kate is the best, Linda is worse than Dan (or Dan is better than Linda). Linda is the worst of the three.

Kate

Linda

Dan

English.....	A
Literature.....	C
Geography.....	A
Maths.....	B
French.....	A
Biology.....	B

English.....	C
Literature.....	B
Geography.....	C
Maths.....	A
French.....	B
Biology.....	C

English.....	B
Literature.....	A
Geography.....	B
Maths.....	C
French.....	C
Biology.....	A

11 Use *less*, *fewer* or *more* to complete the sentences and make them true.

1. There is ... noise in the country than in the city.
2. There are ... tall trees in the country, but there are ... tall buildings in the city.
3. There are ... people in the country.
4. The life is ... expensive in the city, but it is ... healthy.
5. There are ... cars and buses in the country.
6. There are ... modern conveniences in the city.
7. Life is ... boring in the city.

FOCUS



Mr Brown lives here.
So do I.

He doesn't like it.
Neither do his children.

Pete bought two tickets.
So did Jane.

Pete didn't go there.
Neither did Jane.

¹ quite satisfactory is not as good as satisfactory

We are at school.
So is Bob.

They aren't cold.
Neither am I.

Susan can swim.
So can her cousins.

Susan can't ski.
Neither can her brother.

Bill will be 13 next year.
So will Fran and John.

I won't go to Africa.
Neither will Irene.

We have got a nice cottage.
So has Mrs Blake.

Bob has not got a bike.
Neither has his sister.

- 12 Nick's younger brother John wants to be like Nick. He always says he likes and dislikes the things Nick does. Sometimes Nick laughs at John and says funny things but little John agrees with everything. Play the part of John.



Nick

1. I like crocodiles.
2. I have never seen a bee.
3. Yesterday I ate ten ice creams.
4. I can't swim at all.
5. I am going to be a butcher.
6. I was flying in my dream.
7. I must cook supper for the whole family.
8. I will be one hundred years old tomorrow.

John

1. So do I.
2. —
3. —
4. —
5. —
6. —
7. —
8. —

- 13 a) Read the words in transcription.

[ˈpɪdʒɪn], ['kri:tʃə], ['spi:sɪ:z], [ɪk'stɪŋkt], [dɪ'strɔɪ], [kjʊə],
['dæmɪdʒ], ['reptail], ['mæml], ['hæbitæt], ['ɪnsekt], [ɪn'deindʒə],
['ka:dbo:d], [ɪn'klu:d], [sə'venə].

- b) Listen to the tape, 16, and check your reading.

LET US READ AND LEARN

14 a) Read and guess what the underlined words mean.

1. The country is rich in natural resources [rɪ'sɔ:sɪz].
2. The doctor said he would test [test] my blood pressure.
3. The box is heavy. It weighs¹ more than a ton [tʌn].
4. It is very good when there is much ozone ['əʊzəʊn] in the air.
5. We need a filter ['filtə]. The water is very dirty.
6. What do you know about ecology [ɪ'kɒlədʒi] in big cities?
7. Is ultraviolet [,ʌltrə'veiəlit] radiation [,reɪdi'eɪʃn] dangerous?

b) Look these words up to make sure that you have guessed right.

15 Read the words, look them up and study the word combinations and sentences to know how to use them.

an environment [ɪn'veɪərənmənt] (*n*): a healthy environment. A noisy room is not the best environment to work in. Many people understand they should protect the environment. Cars are ruining our environment.

to pollute [pə'lut:t] (*v*): To pollute the water, air, atmosphere means to make it dirty and dangerous for people and animals to live in or to use. Nowadays many newspapers write about the polluted atmosphere of towns and cities.

pollution [pə'lju:ʃn] (*n*): Environmental pollution is becoming dangerous. Many scientists speak about serious changes in the climate because of the pollution of the atmosphere. The government didn't seem to notice the pollution and the noise.

to cause [kɔ:z] (*v*): to cause a fire, to cause an illness, to cause danger. A burning cigarette caused the fire. What causes hot air to rise? Overeating causes a lot of diseases.

destruction [dɪ'strʌkʃn] (*n*): awful destruction, the destruction of the environment. As the result of the fire we

¹ to weigh [wei] — весить, иметь вес

can speak about the destruction of the whole forest. The destruction of the city took place in 1942. Pouring oil¹ into the water will cause pollution and the destruction of our seas and rivers.

- a **shortage** [ʃɔ:tɪdʒ] (*n*): There was no shortage of helpers. After the hot summer there was a shortage of water.
- a **population** [,pʊpjʊ'leɪʃn] (*n*): a small population, with a population less than What's the population of London? The population in Western European countries is growing. Moscow is a city with a population of over 10 million.
- a **dump** [dʌmp] (*n*): Take all that litter to the town rubbish dump. This town is a real dump!
- to **dump** (*v*): They dumped a lot of rubbish in the river. All the countries protest against dumping acid waste in the seas and oceans.
- waste** [weɪst] (*n*): nuclear waste, radioactive waste, industrial waste. A lot of waste from factories and plants goes into the river. The scientists try to solve the problem of radioactive waste.
- poison** ['pɔɪzn] (*n*): Some mushrooms have poison. Rat poison can be dangerous for people.
- to **poison** (*v*): People can be poisoned by industrial waste. Someone tried to poison our dog's food. Isn't it cruel!
- nuclear** ['nju:kliə] (*adj*): a nuclear war, nuclear tests, a nuclear-free zone. There are no winners in nuclear war. Nuclear waste endangers people's lives. People all over the world protest against nuclear tests. I should like to see Europe as a nuclear-free zone.
- a **weapon** ['wepən] (*n*): nuclear weapons. Guns and knives are weapons; they are used to kill or hurt people in a fight or a war. That night the great detective was not carrying a weapon. What countries of the world have got nuclear weapons?
- to **survive** [sə'veɪv] (*v*): We shall survive. We won't die. Do you know that camels² can survive for many days without eating and drinking? He was the only one who sur-

¹ oil [ɔɪl] — нефть

² a camel ['kæml] — верблюд

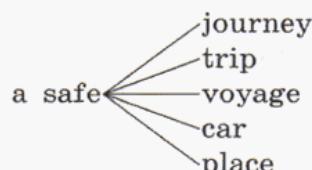
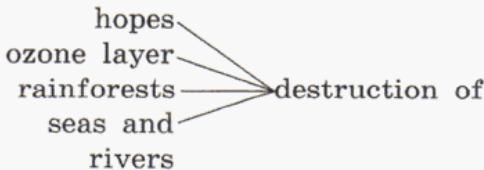
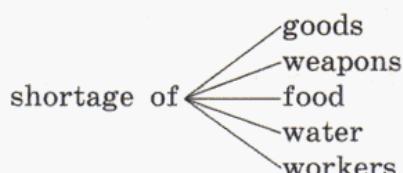
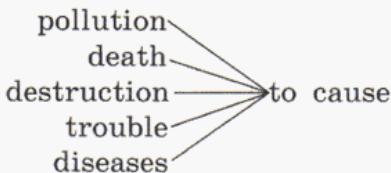
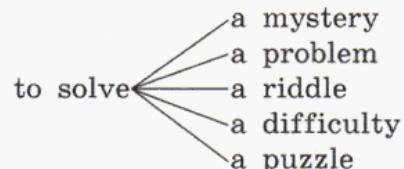
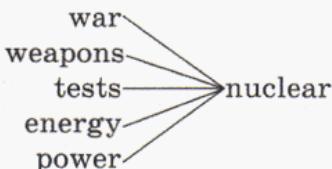
vived in the fire. The first settlers in America survived their first severe winter on the new continent and celebrated it with their Indian friends.

safe [seif] (*adj*): This food is not safe for babies. Bye-bye, have a safe journey. A knife is not a safe toy.

16 Complete the sentences using the words: *a shortage, waste, destruction, pollution, poison, population (2), nuclear weapons*.

1. The government is not supported by the
2. The weathermen are speaking about the ... of water again this summer.
3. The country is not able to feed its
4. Factories pour a lot of ... into seas.
5. What caused the ... of wildlife in this area?
6. Smoke from factories is making ... quite bad.
7. Industrial waste can be ... for fish living in the seas.
8. For the first time ... were used by the USA in 1945.

17 a) Think of the best way to express the same in Russian.



b) Make up not less than 10 true sentences with some of these word combinations.

18 Listen to the tape, **CD 17**, and read the poem, then learn it by heart.

I MEANT TO DO MY WORK TODAY

(by Richard Le Yalleinne)

I meant to do my work today —
But a brown bird sang in the apple tree,
And a butterfly flitted¹ across the field,
And all the leaves were calling me,
And the wind went sighing² over the land
Tossing the grasses to and fro,³
And a rainbow held out its shining hand —
So what could I do but laugh and go?

LET US READ

19 Choose and read aloud the words and word combinations on the topic “The Earth in Danger”.

An influence, a shower, a rainbow, pollution, misty, nuclear weapons, a shortage of food, a reptile, a government, a poisoned river, the Statue of Liberty, industrial waste, radiation, heat, a greenhouse, the greenhouse effect, sunlight, acid rain, a rainstorm, an ozone hole,⁴ coast, health, a population, an environment.

20 Read the texts and give them titles.

THIS FRAGILE PLANET

The word *environment* means simply what is around us. Some people live in a town environment; for others, their environment is the countryside. But the air we breathe, the soil⁵ on which we stand and walk, the water we drink are all part of the environment.

¹ to flit [flɪt] — порхать, перелетать с места на место

² to go sighing ['saɪŋ] — вздыхать

³ to toss to and fro [frəʊ] — раскачивать

⁴ a hole [həʊl] — дыра

⁵ soil [soɪl] — почва, земля

Nowadays people understand how important it is to solve the environmental problems that endanger people's lives. The most serious environmental problems are:

- pollution in its many forms (water pollution, air pollution, nuclear pollution);
- noise from cars, buses, planes, *etc.*;
- destruction of wildlife and the beauty of the countryside;
- shortage of natural resources (metals, different kinds of fuel¹);
- the growth of population.

A. _____

"Water, water everywhere, not any drop to drink," said the sailor from Coleridge's² poem describing to a friend how awful it was to be without drinking water on a ship in the middle of the ocean. It is strange to think that the water around his ship was probably quite safe to drink. It was salty — but not polluted. Sea water today is much more dangerous.

There is no ocean or sea which is not used as a dump. The Pacific Ocean, especially, has suffered from nuclear pollution because the French Government tests nuclear weapons there. Many seas are used for dumping industrial and nuclear waste. Britain alone dumps 250,000 tons of industrial waste straight into the North Sea. This poisons and kills fish and sea animals. "Nuclear-poisoned" fish can be eaten by people.

Many rivers and lakes are poisoned too. Fish and reptiles can't live in them. There is not enough oxygen in the water. In such places all the birds leave their habitats and many plants die. If people drink this water they can die too. It happens so because factories and plants produce a lot of waste and pour it into rivers. So they poison the water. Factories use clean water. After the water is used it can become poison which goes back into rivers and seas.

¹ fuel ['fju:əl] — топливо

² Coleridge, Samuel Taylor (1772—1834) — an English poet and critic, one of the leaders of the Romantic movement in England. *The Rime of the Ancient Mariner* is one of his best known poems.

B.

18. When the Americans decided to clean up the Statue of Liberty in 1986, the first thing they had to do was to make a hole in her nose and take away the acid rain¹ that had collected inside. The polluted air of New York had mixed with the rain and damaged the Statue badly. And you certainly know that most of the pollution in big cities comes from cars and buses.

More and more often people are told not to spend too much time in direct sunlight, because ultraviolet radiation from the sun can cause skin cancer.² Normally the ozone layer³ in the atmosphere protects us from such radiation, but if there are holes in the ozone layer ultraviolet radiation can get to the earth. Many scientists think that these holes are the result of air pollution.

Nuclear power stations can go wrong and cause nuclear pollution. This happened in Windscale in Britain, in Three Mile Island in the USA and Chernobyl in the former Soviet Union. Nuclear pollution cannot be seen but its effects can be terrible.

To make air clean again we need good filters at nuclear power stations, at factories and plants and also in cars and buses.

Both clean air and clean water are necessary for our health. If people want to survive they must solve these problems quickly. Man is beginning to understand that his environment is not just his own town or country, but the whole earth. That's why people all over the world think and speak so much about ecology. ☺

21 Find in the text and read out English equivalents of these words and word combinations:

- 1) жить в условиях города; 2) решать проблемы окружающей среды; 3) угрожать жизни людей, подвергать жизнь людей опасности; 4) загрязнение водной среды; 5) загряз-

¹ acid ['æsɪd] rain — кислотный дождь

² skin cancer ['skɪn 'kænsə] — рак кожи

³ layer ['leɪə] — слой

нение воздуха; 6) разрушение, уничтожение живой природы; 7) красота сельского ландшафта; 8) нехватка природных ресурсов; 9) пригодная, не опасная для питья (*о воде*); 10) использоваться в качестве мусорной свалки; 11) проводить испытания ядерного оружия; 12) промышленные и ядерные отходы; 13) рыба, подвергшаяся радиационному заражению; 14) покидать места своего обитания; 15) сливать (отходы) в близлежащие реки; 16) сильно испортил статую; 17) атомные электростанции; 18) испортиться, выйти из строя.

22 Answer these questions on the text.

1. What does the word *environment* mean?
2. What are the most serious environmental problems? Which of them are described in the text?
3. What makes sea water dangerous nowadays?
4. Why is it dangerous to dump industrial waste in the sea?
5. Why was the Statue of Liberty in New York damaged?
6. Where does air pollution in the cities mostly come from?
7. Why is it not safe to be in direct sunlight in certain places?
8. Why are nuclear power stations dangerous?

23 Choose the best way to define these.

<u>Pollution:</u>	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1) dirty water, air and atmosphere;2) making water, air, atmosphere dirty and dangerous for people and animals to live in;3) people who make water, air and atmosphere dirty and dangerous.
<u>Environment:</u>	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1) air, water and land, in which people, animals and plants live;2) an organization that wants to protect the natural world;3) something that we do to prevent air and water pollution.

<u>Ecology:</u>	1) natural balance between plants, animals, people and their environment; 2) plants growing in some area; 3) part of medicine that helps people to lead a healthy life.
<u>Greenhouse effect:</u>	1) a building in a garden or park which has glass walls and a glass roof in which you grow plants; 2) a salad made mainly with green vegetables; 3) the problem of temperature rise in the Earth's atmosphere.

LET US TALK

24 Prove the following with the help of ex. 20.

1. Nowadays there are a lot of environmental problems.
2. People destroy many habitats of animals.
3. Direct sunlight can be dangerous.
4. Nuclear power stations can cause a lot of trouble.
5. Man should solve ecological problems as soon as possible.

25 Speak about the problems of air pollution and water pollution as you see them. (Ex. 20 can help you.) Mention water bodies used as rubbish dumps, destruction of buildings in towns, water and air pollution influence on people's health.

26 Think and say if you change your own environment for the better or for the worse.

1. We speak about water shortages. What do you use water for? Do you waste¹ any? Do you often take hot baths? wash clothes? How much water do you use on washing?

¹ to waste — тратить понапрасну, транжирить

2. Water pollution is becoming quite bad. Have you ever thrown anything into a river or a lake? If so, what? Why? Have you ever washed your bicycle in a river or a lake? How dirty did it make the water?

3. People use a lot of washing powder.¹ Have you ever done it? Does your family do it? Do you think it does harm to our rivers and seas?

4. Burning makes air pollution worse. Have you ever burnt rubbish or autumn leaves?

5. Most of the pollution in big cities comes from cars. They also make a lot of noise. Has your family got a car? How often do you use it?

6. One of the environmental problems is a shortage of food. People in some countries even suffer from hunger. Does your family buy much food? Do you sometimes throw it away? How much of it do you waste?

WILL YOU GIVE ALL THESE UP TO KEEP RIVERS, LAKES, SEAS AND AIR CLEAN?

27 Your class was asked to take part in the TV show called "Save Our Planet". Each of you has two minutes to give your reasons to speak on one of the subjects below. Choose one of them and get ready to speak in this TV programme.

- Environment yesterday and today.
- Environmental problems nowadays.
- Water pollution.
- Air pollution.
- Ecology and people's health.
- Destruction of wildlife and countryside beauty.
- Food, water and natural resources and their shortage.

28 All over the world people are moving from the country to the cities. Many prefer to live in the city but some would like to make their home in the country. Which is your choice? Explain it.

EXAMPLE: I'd rather live in the country because I can spend a lot of time outside.

¹ washing powder ['paʊdə] — стиральный порошок

<u>Country</u>	<u>City</u>
to lead a quiet life	to lead an interesting life
to work outdoors	to have many things to do and to see
to take care of animals	to have all the modern conveniences
to breathe fresh air	to work with modern machines
to eat healthy food	to have a lot of places to get education
to enjoy the countryside	to be able to visit some interesting places
to live among friendly people	to be able to have a lot of fun

LET US WRITE

29 Do ex. 1, ex. 2, ex. 4, ex. 5, ex. 11, ex. 13, ex. 16 in writing.

30 Express the same in English.

a) 1. Если мы сможем разрешить экологические проблемы, мы спасем Землю. 2. Люди будут более здоровыми, если загрязнение воздуха будет остановлено. 3. Если разные страны будут испытывать ядерное оружие, это вызовет радиоактивное загрязнение. 4. Если фабрики будут сливать отходы в реки, вода в них будет отравлена. 5. Мы выживем, если будем защищать природу все вместе.

b) 1. Когда поедешь на юг, постарайся не находиться под прямыми лучами солнца долго. 2. Когда мы будем участвовать в телешоу, мы будем обсуждать экологические проблемы. 3. Когда экология станет лучше, животные вернутся в места своего обитания. 4. Ты узнаешь о редких и исчезающих видах животных, когда прочтешь эту книгу. 5. Маленький Питер сможет увидеть различные виды млекопитающих, птиц, рептилий и насекомых, когда пойдет с мамой в зоопарк.

- 31** Write sentences about John to show that he always wants to be like Nick (ex. 12).

EXAMPLE: Nick likes crocodiles. So does John.

- 32** Look at the words again and get ready to write a spelling quiz on them.



a resource, to test, a ton, ozone, a filter, ultraviolet, radiation, an environment, to pollute, pollution, to cause, destruction, a shortage, a population, to dump, waste, poison, nuclear, a weapon, to survive, safe

LET US LISTEN AND DISCUSS

- 33** a) Make sure you know these words:

positive ['prəzɪtɪv] — положительный

an ambulance ['æmbjʊləns] — машина скорой помощи

negative ['neɡatɪv] — отрицательный

a traffic jam ['træfɪk ,dʒæm] — пробка, затор на дороге

- b) Listen to the tape, **19**, and say why the young member of the Women's Club wanted to stop the car producer.

- 34** Put these sentences in the order they are given in the text to make an outline of the story. Then work in pairs and tell the story to each other. Give your own conclusion.

1. Main ecological problems in the gentleman's talk.
2. Positive aspects of cars.
3. Usual Friday meetings at the Women's Club.
4. Negative aspects of cars.

- 35** Pretend you are at the Women's Club meeting. Play the role of the gentleman and answer the following.

1. Which in your opinion is the most serious ecological problem?
2. What continents and countries suffer mainly from shortages of food? Can this be helped?
3. Why are

cars dangerous for the people in towns and cities? 4. Why do you think there are more and more cars with every coming year?

36 Listen to the text again and write down positive and negative effects that cars have.

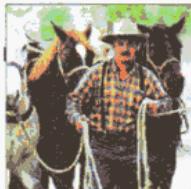
37 Discuss these questions with your friends.

1. Do you think cars have improved life or not? Have they made people's life at least easier? 2. Which do you think is the best way to travel — by car, by train, by plane, on a bicycle, on foot? Explain your choice. 3. If you have a lot of money, will you buy a car? Do you think it is important to have a car nowadays? 4. Is it more important to have a car if you live in the city or in the country? Why? 5. Do you agree that cars ruin the countryside, the wildlife?

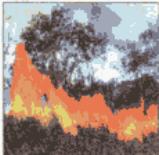
UNIT 5 ECOLOGY



MAN
THE CREATOR



MAN
AND
THE NATURAL
WORLD



MAN
THE DESTROYER



KEEPING
FIT



FOOD

LET US REVIEW

1 Give it a name.

1. Something that kills people or animals if it is swallowed.
2. Not hurt, not in danger, not dangerous.
3. A place where rubbish is left.

- Something that is used to kill or hurt people in a fight or a war.
- A number of people who live in a place, country, etc.
- Making water, air, atmosphere dirty and dangerous for people and animals to live in.
- 1000 kilograms.
- A situation where there is not enough of something.
- Material which was used and is no longer wanted.

2 Ask for more information.

- They survived.
- It was mixed.
- It poisons them.

Reported Speech

Bob: "I live in London."

Bob **said** he lived in London.

Jim: "I can't swim."

Jim **said** he couldn't swim.

Nelly: "Will you help me to solve that problem?"

Nelly **asked** if I **would** help her to solve that problem.

Jane: "Where did they dump all that waste?"

Jane **wanted to know** where they had dumped all that waste.

Polly: "Don't stay long in the direct sunlight, Caroline."

Polly **told** Caroline not to stay long in the direct sunlight.

Mary: "Look at the rainbow, John!"

Mary **asked** John to look at the rainbow.

3 Say how you will change the following in the reported speech if you speak about past events.

tomorrow → ?

in 3 days → ?

in 4 months → ?

in a year → ?

next day → ?

this → ?

these → ?

now → ?

yesterday → ?

3 years ago → ?

4 Look through the dialogue. Change it into the reported speech and then read it aloud.

- Frank:** We had an ecology class yesterday. We discussed different environmental problems.
- Chris:** No wonder. They are the most important problems these days.
- Frank:** I think many people understand they should protect the environment.
- Chris:** Do they really understand that? I'm not quite sure, because factories dump waste into rivers, air pollution is getting worse too.
- Frank:** That's true. And yet more and more people fight against nuclear tests, nuclear weapons and other things.
- Chris:** But will they win? And when will they win these battles?
- Frank:** Don't lose hope. Let's hope for the best.

FOCUS

read + **-er** = reader
write + **-er** = writer

sell + **-er** = seller
produce + **-er** = producer

protect + **-tion** = protection
pollute + **-tion** = pollution

populate + **-tion** = population
cooperate + **-tion** = cooperation

develop + **-ment** = development
govern + **-ment** = government
state + **-ment** = statement

white + **-ness** = whiteness
fresh + **-ness** = freshness
bright + **-ness** = brightness

water + **-less** = waterless
air + **-less** = airless
home + **-less** = homeless

easy + **-ly** = easily
clear + **-ly** = clearly
personal + **-ly** = personally

5

a) What nouns can you form from the following verbs and adjectives?

1. To speak, to buy, to destroy, to create, to dump, to picnic.
2. To operate, to illustrate, to radiate, to cooperate.
3. Calm, ill, soft, ready, dark.

b) Make up true sentences with these verbs and nouns.

6 a) What adjectives can you form from the following nouns with the help of the suffix *-less*?

Penny, land, hair, luck, sun, moon, hope, life, sleep, end, use, care.

b) Make up 6 true sentences with these adjectives. If you are not sure of their spelling consult a dictionary.

FOCUS

N→V

dump — to dump
forecast — to forecast
influence — to influence
damage — to damage
poison — to poison

Adj→V

warm — to warm
calm — to calm
clear — to clear
pale — to pale

7

a) Think of the correct way to express the same in Russian.

1. Homeless people; protection of the environment; a city with a population over 3 million; further development of the country; real freshness of the air; to see clearly; to do the job easily; waterless places; to pollute the atmosphere; to populate the area; to govern the country; I personally think...; important cooperation; to speak powerfully.

2. To warm dinner; to poison an enemy; to forecast the weather; to dump rubbish; to test nuclear weapons; to damage the environment; to influence the government.

b) Think of true sentences with these word combinations and write down at least five of them.

8 Decide which parts of the human body can suffer most of all from bad ecology and name them.

skin, stomach, lungs, blood, arms, the whole body, legs, brain¹

- poisoned water
- polluted air
- traffic noise
- nuclear radiation
- television, computer, etc.
- bad (ecologically unsafe) food
- little physical activity
- radiation from the sun

9 What do you think is more important? Put the words and word combinations in the order of importance.

1) Things that help us to keep fit:

healthy food	modern conveniences
quiet life	physical activity (regular exercise)
sports	good doctors and clinics
medicines	regular eating
clean water and air	information about diseases and their cure

2) Different kinds of physical activity:

summer sports	morning exercises
winter sports	walking
jogging	working in the garden
indoor games	bodybuilding
outdoor games	aerobics

3) Food that is good for your health:

caviar	fruit juices	dairy products:
fruit	fish	milk
vegetables	eggs	butter
bread	tea	cheese
meat	coffee	cream
cereals	sweets and chocolate	sour cream

¹ brain [breɪn] — мозг

10

a) Work in pairs. Interview your partner and find out:

- what he/she does to keep fit
- what he/she does when he/she falls ill
- how often he/she calls the doctor or goes to the doctor
- if he/she goes in for sports
- what kinds of sports he/she prefers
- how much time he/she spends in front of the telly¹

b) Make notes and then tell the class what your partner has told you.

11

Work in pairs or groups and make up Five Golden Rules that people should follow if they want to survive.

Rule 1: Act quickly, don't wait. Nobody will help us if we don't help ourselves.

Rule 2: _____

Rule 4: _____

Rule 3: _____

Rule 5: _____

12 a) Read the words in transcription.

[test], [reɪdɪ'eɪʃn], [ʌltrə'veɪəlɪt], [tʌn], [rɪ'sɔ:sɪz], ['əʊzəʊn],
 ['filtə], [weɪst], [dʌmp], [kɔ:z], [dɪ'strʌksn], [pə'lut:t], [ɪn'veɪərənmənt],
 ['pɔɪzn], [nju:kliə], [seif], [mɪks], [sə'vaɪv], ['wepən].

b) Listen to the tape, 20, and check your reading.

LET US READ AND LEARN

13 a) Read and guess what the underlined words mean.

1. She speaks English with a strange accent ['æksent].
2. Mrs Brown helped the police a lot. They thanked her for her cooperation [kəʊ,ɒpə'reɪʃn].
3. The picnickers ['piknɪkəz] made a fire near the lake.
4. Ecological problems are global ['gləʊbl] problems of the twentieth century.

¹ telly ['telɪ] — television

5. Why do we speak about the ecological crisis ['kraɪsɪs] nowadays?
6. People of many countries come to Moscow to take part in the international [,ɪntə'næʃnəl] Film Festival.
7. Energy ['enədʒɪ] is the power from electricity, wind, *etc.* that helps machines work.
8. When we are happy, we often shout "Hoorah!" [hu'reɪ]
9. Everybody says that the film is good but I personally ['pɜ:snlɪ] don't like it.
10. The news was a terrible shock [ʃɒk]. Who could expect it?
11. Our teacher was taken to hospital and we were all shocked.

b) Look these words up to make sure you have guessed right.

 Read the words, look them up and study the word combinations and sentences to know how to use them.

- a **term** [tɜ:m] (*n*): a summer term, a winter term. In British schools the summer term runs from April to July. It was the first week of the term.
- to **clear** [klɪə] (*v*): to clear the way, to clear a chimney, to clear the table. The children were helping me clear rubbish from the lake. Will you clear the table when we finish eating? Why don't you go for a walk to clear your head?
- a **pile** [paɪl] (*n*): a pile of books, a pile of plates, a pile of clothes. The pile of books is too heavy for her to lift. We put the plates in a pile on the table.
- to **pile** (*v*): He piled food on to his plate. We found the clean plates piled neatly on the kitchen table. Father took the old newspapers and piled them on top of each other.
- a **bit** [bit] / **a little bit**: a little bit of sugar, a bit of bread, to be a bit hungry, to walk a bit. He took a bit of paper and a few bits of wood and made a fire. They waited a bit before the bus came. — Sorry, I'd like to leave earlier today: I'm a bit tired.

- a** **mess** [mes] (*n*): to be in a mess. After the party there was a terrible mess in the room. Her hair was in a terrible mess.
- a** **society** [sə'saiəti] (*n*): a sports society, a drama society. In our school we have a Music Society, which many pupils have joined.
- a** **can** [kæn] (*n*): a can of coke, a can of lemonade, a can of pepsi, a can of soda. We need three more cans of coke. It's a long journey and we'll be thirsty.
- to** **can** (*v*): We can different fruit and vegetables every autumn.
- to** **spoil** [spoɪl] (*v*): to spoil the clothes, to spoil the evening, to spoil the effect. "You have spoiled everything by your questions," said the girl. After the rainstorm her new dress was quite spoiled.
- a** **disaster** [dɪ'za:stə] (*n*): a terrible disaster. Fires and storms are disasters. His first day at school was a disaster.
- to** **praise** [preɪz] (*v*): to praise the speech, to praise the winner, to praise the film. The teacher praised Mike's work. Judy's friends praised the picture that she had on the wall of her living room.
- praise** (*n*): That's the best praise I've ever heard.

15 Name 3 things you have personally seen or heard recently.

16 Match the words similar in meaning.¹

EXAMPLE: to ruin — to spoil

to ruin
a little
a crisis
help (*n*)
litter
to try
to make dirty and dangerous
to surprise unpleasantly
to take away
to begin working

rubbish
cooperation
a bit
to test
to spoil
a disaster
to shock
to pollute
to set to work
to clear away

¹ similar ['similə] in meaning — похожий, близкий по значению

17 Think of the best way to express the same in Russian.

global
energy
nuclear
ecological

nuclear
ecological
global

international
help
industry
cooperation
organization

a pile of
books
boxes
newspapers

18 Complete the text. Use the new words. Ex. 14 can help you. Check your version with the help of the tape, 21.

APPLE JAM

On the last day of the t... Jane decided to surprise her mother and make a few c... of apple jam. She cl... the table, pi... a lot of apples on it and bravely s... to work. The whole job was a b... difficult, as Jane thought, but she knew she could do it. She worked and worked with a lot of en... and a quarter of an hour later she put the cut apples on the cooker and went out to watch the telly leav- ing the kitchen in a terrible m.... The film was interest- ing, so she forgot all about the jam.



Luckily, Jane's mother returned from work a b... earli- er that day. She was just in time to turn off the gas before the jam was sp.... . The kitchen looked ugly but the moth-

er was not sh..., she didn't say anything but quietly cl...
the ...s, called Jane and pr... her little daughter for the
tasty jam.

19 Listen to the tape, 22, and read the poem, then learn it by heart.

I GO FORTH¹ TO MOVE ABOUT THE EARTH

I go forth to move about the Earth.
I go forth as the owl,² wise and knowing.
I go forth as the eagle, powerful and bold.
I go forth as the dove,³ peaceful and gentle.
I go forth to move about the Earth in wisdom,⁴ courage,
and peace.

LET US READ

20 Read this text written by a twelve-year-old girl and say why, in your opinion, she wrote such a story.

“CLEAN UP THE COUNTRYSIDE” SOCIETY

(By Linda Black, age 12)

23. Vicki was coming home from her small country school and it was one of the last days of the term. The sun was in the sky and the birds were singing their beautiful songs. Vicki loved the countryside and she had lived there all her life. The weather was so nice that Vicki decided to take a longer way home, to the cottage where she lived. On her way she passed through a little grove⁵ where she used to play. Vicki was shocked to see that the grove looked terrible: it was piled with rubbish. Vicki ran all the way back home. She had to do something about this mess. Suddenly she had an idea. She would start her own “Clean up the Countryside” Society.

¹ forth [fɔ:θ] — вперед

² an owl [aʊl] — сова

³ a dove [dʌv] — голубка

⁴ wisdom ['wɪzðəm] — мудрость

⁵ a grove [grəʊv] — роща



When Vicki got home she phoned four of her school friends — Alice, Rosie, Cathy and Jane. They all agreed to meet her at the grove. The girls set to work filling big black plastic bags with rubbish. It was hard work but soon all the rubbish was cleared away and the grove looked beautiful again.

On the next day the society had another meeting. Vicki said, "Today we must watch for rubbish dumpers."¹ Everyone agreed and soon Rosie and Jane noticed some picnickers. The picnickers were finishing their picnic and they left all their rubbish on the ground. "What are you going to do with all that litter you've left?" asked the girls. "I don't know what you mean," said a tall man with an American accent. "Just think," said Vicki. "Think about those bits of glass that you have left from your bottles of juice, of all those cola cans and think about how ugly the place will look littered like that. It can also hurt wild animals." "The young lady is right," said a woman with a little hat on. "We just can't leave this rubbish here." "That's right," said Vicki. "Here take this bag." "Thank you, girls," they said, "for helping us understand that the country is a beautiful place and that we must not spoil it." Then they all got into their American car and drove to the town. Vicki and her friends shouted, "Three cheers for our Society!"² Hip Hip Hoorah! Hip Hip Hoorah! Hip Hip Hoorah!"

¹ rubbish dumpers ['rʌbiʃ 'dʌmpəz] — люди, которые устраивают мусорные свалки на природе

² Three cheers for our Society! — Троекратное «Ура!» нашему обществу!

You can imagine how surprised the girls were when the next morning their Science teacher, Mr Bird, spoke to the class about ecology and the importance of keeping the environment clean. He said that pollution was getting worse and worse which could easily bring about a global disaster. The result of the environmental crisis was that in many parts of the world humans were beginning to suffer from shortages of food and clean water to survive. But Mr Bird said there was always hope. People had already learnt some important rules to protect the environment:

Dos and Don'ts¹

- 1. Ask** your governments to make laws to protect air, water and soil.
- 2. Develop** international cooperation to solve ecological problems together.
- 3. Save** water, gas, energy and other natural resources.
- 4. Keep** your towns, cities and countryside clean.
- 1. Don't waste** water, gas, energy, natural resources.
- 2. Don't poison** the water, air and soil.
- 3. Don't dump** or pour industrial waste into rivers, lakes, seas and oceans.
- 4. Don't turn** the planet into a rubbish dump.

At the end of the lesson Mr Bird asked his class what each of them could personally do to help protect the environment. Vicki told the class what had happened in the grove the day before. The teacher and the students praised Vicki, Alice, Rosie, Cathy and Jane and decided to join their "Clean up the Countryside" Society.



Answer the questions on the text.

1. What happened to Vicki on one of the last days of the term? 2. Why did Vicki take a longer way home that day?
3. Why was Vicki shocked when she was passing through the grove? 4. What idea did Vicki have when she saw the mess?
5. Who helped Vicki to do the job? 6. What did the five girls do? 7. What did the friends do the next day?

¹ Dos and Don'ts — Что надо и чего не надо делать

8. What did Mr Bird say about the result of the environmental crisis? 9. Why did Mr Bird and the class praise Vicki and her four friends? 10. Why did all the students decide to join Vicki's "Clean up the Countryside" Society?

22 Say 3 phrases on each of these items.

1. Vicki loved the countryside.
2. Vicki was shocked.
3. Vicki had an idea.
4. Vicki and her friends watched for rubbish dumpers.
5. The picnickers understood the girls.
6. The teacher spoke about the crisis.
7. People had learnt some important rules.
8. Vicki told the class about their society.

23 Describe the grove before the girls cleared away the mess and after it.

Before

to be in a terrible mess
to be piled with rubbish
a lot of litter thrown
about
bits of glass from bottles
plastic bottles
paper and plastic bags
broken branches
to look ugly

After

to be cleared away
to be picked up and put
into special plastic bags
to look wonderful again
clean and tidy
no rubbish under the trees
and bushes
a great place to live in
a healthy habitat for animals

LET US TALK

24 Tell Vicki's story (the one that she told her class) or Mr Bird's story (the one that he heard from Vicki).

25 Make up and act out a dialogue between Vicki and one of the American picnickers.

26 Comment on one of the *Dos* and the *Don'ts* from the text.

27 Imagine that you and your friends decided to start a "Clean up Our City" Society. What will you do? What's your plan?

28 What can you do to help the world? Do you think these words of advice can help? Which of them are most important? What will you add?

Words of Advice

- Walk or use a bicycle instead of going by car.
- Don't make litter with paper, cans or bottles.
- Recycle¹ used materials such as metal, bottles and paper.
- Plant more trees.
- Feed birds in winter and help them survive in the cold.
- Save energy. Use less electricity and gas. Turn off the lights when you leave a room.
- Clear rubbish from lakes and rivers.
- Have showers, not baths. Showers use less water.

LET US WRITE

29 Do ex. 5, ex. 17 in writing.

30 Express the same in English.

1. Учитель спросил Аню, какие международные организации она знает.
2. В комнате был жуткий беспорядок.
3. Маленький Ник сказал, что папа похвалил его.
4. Мэри хотела узнать, где мы будем сажать деревья.
5. Бабушка сказала, что через три дня погода изменится к лучшему.
6. Эндрю сказал, что прошлая зима была очень холодной и им приходилось кормить животных.
7. Маша попросила меня не оставлять мусор в саду.
8. Боб сказал, что он всегда гасит свет, когда выходит из комнаты.
9. Докладчик (speaker) посоветовал нам экономить энергию и использовать меньше электричества и газа.
10. Повар испортил суп: он пересолил его.
11. Салли всегда помогает маме убирать со стола.

¹ to recycle [rɪ'saɪkl] — сдавать в переработку

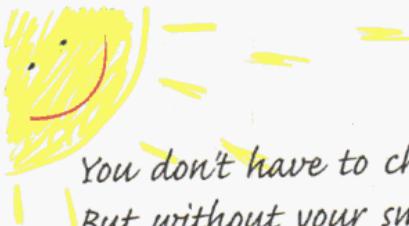
31

Imagine that the Greenpeace¹ organization asked you to design T-shirts telling people about ecological problems of the day. Work in small groups and design 3 T-shirts on big sheets of paper. Show your designs to the class. Choose the best three.



32

Nick is sick and in bed. He has broken his leg and has to stay in bed for a month. John wants to cheer him up. This is the postcard Nick got from his friend John. Try and understand what it is about and write your own Get-Well card to your friend who is ill.



You don't have to cheer up if you don't want to!
 But without your smile the sun won't shine,
 And if the sun doesn't shine, the birds won't sing,
 And if the birds don't sing, no one will bother
 to get out of bed,
 The world will be a dull, lifeless place.
 But hey! Don't let THAT influence your decision!
 You don't have to cheer up if you don't want to!



33

Look at the words again and get ready to write a spelling quiz on them.



an accent, cooperation, a picnicker, global, a crisis, international, energy, hoorah, personally, to shock (to be shocked), a term, to clear, a pile, to pile, a (little) bit, a mess, a society, a can, to can, to spoil, a disaster, praise, to set to work

¹ Greenpeace ['grι:npi:s] — an international organization that works to protect the environment from harm

LET US LISTEN AND DISCUSS

- 34 a) Make sure you know these words:

choosy ['tʃu:zi] — разборчивый, капризный
path [pa:θ] — дорожка
gate [geit] — ворота
bush [buʃ] — куст
fence [fens] — изгородь
dig [dɪg] — копать

- b) Listen to the tape, 24, and complete these sentences.

1. You know that the British climate...
2. When it begins snowing hard it can become...
3. One night there was...
4. When Mr White woke up in the morning he saw...
5. Mr White couldn't...
6. Mr White paid a man ... from the path.
7. Don't throw the snow on that side, because...
8. Mr White was pleased until...
9. All the snow from the path was...
10. Mr White had to dig his car out...

- 35 Tell the story on the part of Mr White and on the part of the man who was paid to do the job. You can use the task above as an outline.

- 36 Think of the moral of this story and discuss it with your class.

UNIT 6

CONSOLIDATION ONE

LET US TALK

- 1 Answer the questions and discuss the problems of *weather, climate and ecology*.

1. Do you think the hole in the ozone layer will get bigger? Why?
2. The world climate is changing, isn't it? What changes can you name?
3. Do you think the earth will become warmer? Why?
4. What do you remember about the greenhouse effect?
5. What serious ecological problems are

discussed nowadays? 6. What environmental problems are discussed nowadays? 7. Do you think ecological problems should be discussed in class? Why? In what lessons? Do you discuss them? Can you remember one such lesson? 8. What do you feel about the problem of the extinct and rare plants and animals? Should they be put into the Red Book? Why? 9. What can people do to save our planet from an ecological disaster? How can you personally take part in this work?

2 Work in pairs and complete the dialogue, then act it out.

IN A PET SHOP



Shop assistant: Good afternoon. _____?

*Customer:*¹ Yes, you can. I'm looking for a pet for my little daughter. _____?

Shop assistant: What kind of pet would she like?

Something usual or _____?

¹ a customer ['kʌstəmə] — покупатель

- Customer:* I'm not quite sure. I know she wants to have a snake or a crocodile, but she isn't going to have one.
- Shop assistant:* How about a _____ or a _____?
- Customer:* Hmm. They are not as friendly as dogs, _____?
- Shop assistant:* No. But they're very clean and they eat less. Then maybe you'd prefer a bird, a _____ or a _____, for example?
- Customer:* Which would you recommend?
- Shop assistant:* Well, you can't teach a _____ to speak.
- Customer:* But _____ speak too much and too loudly. I would like something quiet.
- Shop assistant:* A quiet pet? How about a goldfish or a _____? They are the quietest pets I know.

- 3 Tell your classmates what the customer and the shop assistant in a pet shop talked about.
- 4 Comment on this: "Man the destroyer, man the creator."

LET US LISTEN AND DISCUSS

- 5 Listen to the tape, CD 25, look at the map and read what weather forecast radio gives for the USA today.

WEATHER FORECASTS ON THE RADIO

In New York — home of the Statue of Liberty and the skyscrapers — it'll be sunny and mild, a little bit cloudy, but nice and warm. What a beautiful day to walk about the city!

Down in the southeast today the weather will be wonderful. In **Miami, Florida**, a popular vacation place, it's going to be sunny and very hot. It's ninety degrees Fahrenheit. A perfect day for the beach.

Not so in **Springfield, Illinois**, it's cool and windy, we expect rain this afternoon. So get out your umbrella.

It's thirty-two degrees Fahrenheit. That's zero degrees Celsius outside **Denver, Colorado**. There's two feet of snow already and it's going to snow some more. It's a perfect place for skiing.



And on the west coast in **Los Angeles, California** — home of Hollywood movie stars and the best cars — it's sunny and warm. It will be a beautiful day for a drive up the coast.

And that's the weather in the USA today.

6 Look at the map of Russia and make up a radio forecast for certain places in the country. Ex. 5 can help you.



Vladivostok — Get out your umbrella.

Yakutsk — It's a perfect day for skiing.

Novosibirsk — Get out your warm coat.

Ekaterinburg — What a beautiful day for a ride in the country!

Murmansk — It will be a perfect day for fishing.

St. Petersburg — It's a perfect day to walk in the city.

Moscow — Don't make any plans.

Volgograd — Get out your light clothes and sunglasses.

Sochi — A perfect day for the beach.

7 Answer the questions on the topic "Animal World". Check your answers with the tape, 26.

DO YOU KNOW?

1. What is the name of the animal that gives birth to lambs?
2. Young dogs are called puppies, young cats are called kittens, what are young goats called?

3. What pets are kept in cages?
4. Do you know why whales and dolphins are not fish?
5. There's one bird which is so lazy that it doesn't build its own nest and doesn't hatch¹ its own eggs. This bird lays its eggs in other birds' nests and gets them to do the hard work for it. Do you know which bird this is?
6. Which is the fastest running bird in the world (it can't fly)?
7. Which animals that you can think of belong to the cat family?
8. There are two types of elephants found on earth. One is the African elephant. What's the other one called?
9. A fawn² is a young animal that lives in woods or forests. What will it be when it grows up?
10. These creatures catch their food in special nets that they make themselves. What are they called? How many legs do they have?
11. What is a rabbit's home called?
12. This reptile carries its home round on its back. What is it?

LET US READ

- 8 Read the text "Ecology of Man" and say why people need no less protection than animals do.

ECOLOGY OF MAN

27. It may sound funny to you, but man needs protection and care as much as animals do. People's habitats — their homes, towns and cities — must be kept ecologically clean. In the places where people drink dirty water, eat bad food and breathe polluted air they suffer from serious diseases and die early; their children are born weak. No medicines prescribed by the doctors can save them. This problem becomes more and more serious with every passing day. The modern way of life, when people do

¹ to hatch [hætʃ] — высиживать птенцов

² a fawn [fɔ:n] — оленёнок

little physical activity, use cars instead of walking, watch television for many hours and work on computers is turning them into “legless creatures.”

9 Think of at least five things Modern Man must do to survive. Compare your lists.

10 Ask questions on the text for your classmates to answer.

LET US WRITE

11 Write the same in English.

Предсказывать погоду; климатические изменения; разрешить проблему; недостаток питьевой воды; ядерная энергия; быть причиной разрушений; загрязнение воздуха; выжить; место обитания; ниже нуля; парниковый эффект; озоновые дыры; оказывать влияние на окружающую среду; исчезнувшие виды животных; вылечивать болезни; уничтожать леса; сбрасывать отходы в реки.

GREAT BRITAIN

UNIT 7

HOW MUCH DO WE KNOW ABOUT BRITAIN?

You already know a lot about Britain and its people,
but some things are easily forgotten.

Let us brush up our knowledge
of the country.

So...

LET US REVIEW

1 Look at the map (page 89) and say: a) what the main parts of Great Britain are; b) what their capitals are; c) what their symbols are.

2 Choose the right item.

1. The Union Jack is ...

- a) the flag of the UK c) the flag of Wales
b) the flag of Scotland d) the flag of England

2. The British Prime Minister lives at ...

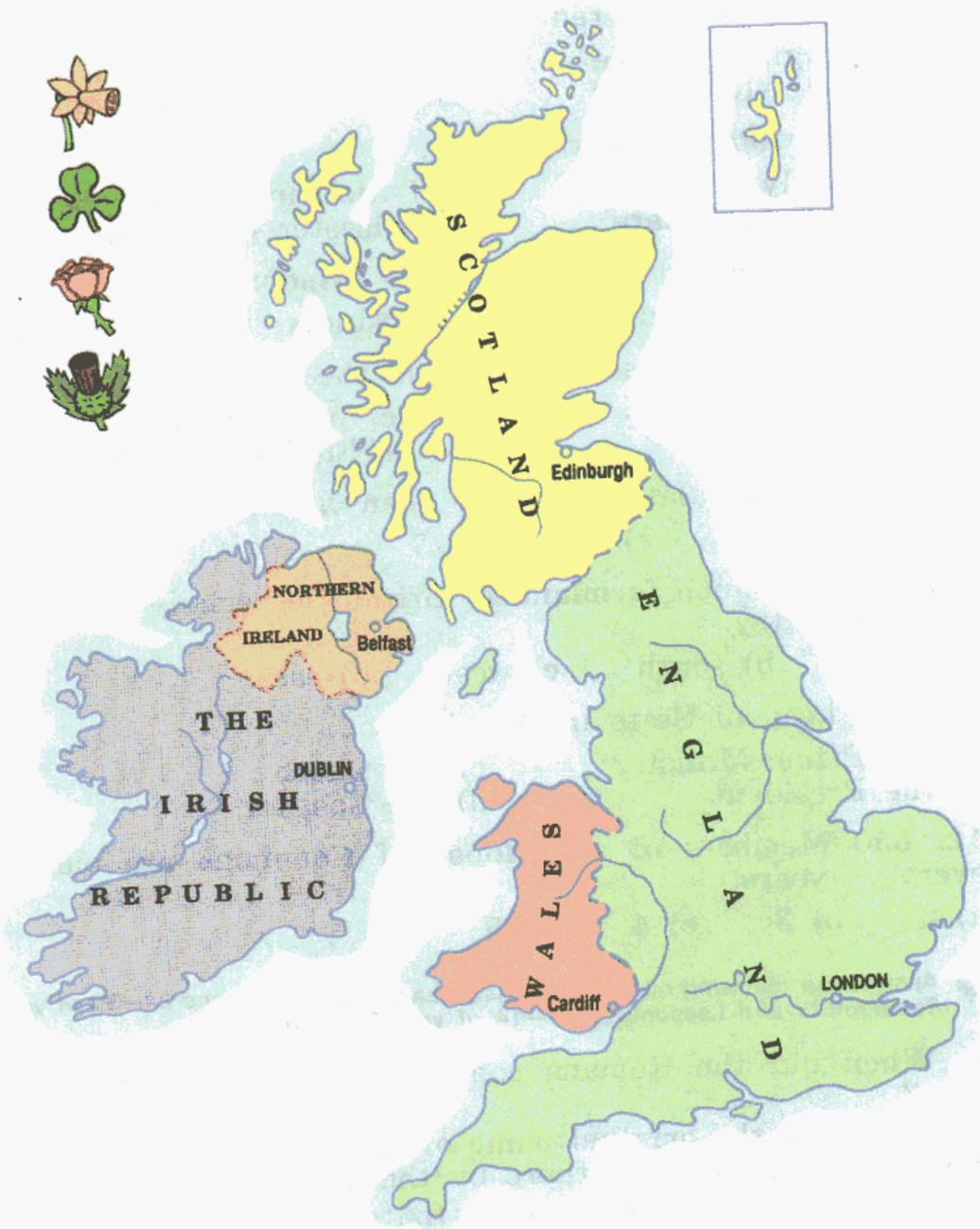
- a) 12 Whitehall c) 7 Russel Street
b) 10 Downing Street d) 15 Oxford Street

3. Whitehall is ...

- a) a street leading from Trafalgar Square to the Houses of Parliament;
b) a big hall in the centre of London;
c) a white palace near Trafalgar Square;
d) the palace where the Queen lives in summer.

4. The Great Fire of London broke out in ...

- a) 1066 b) 1766 c) 1106 d) 1666



5. Sir Christopher Wren built ...
a) Buckingham Palace c) St. Paul's Cathedral
b) Westminster Abbey d) the Tower of London
6. The National Gallery is in ...
a) Piccadilly Circus c) Trafalgar Square
b) Parliament Square d) Leicester ['lestə] Square
7. Westminster is the ... centre of London.
a) cultural b) political c) business d) industrial
8. Great Britain is separated from the continent by ...
a) the Pacific Ocean c) the Bristol Channel
b) the Irish Sea d) the English Channel
9. Britain's population is more than ... million people.
a) 56 b) 5,6 c) 560 d) 7
10. There is much farmland in Britain, especially in the ... of the country.
a) north b) south c) west d) east
11. The head of State in Britain is ...
a) the Prime Minister c) the Queen
b) the President d) the Speaker
12. 650 Members of the House of Commons are elected every ... years.
a) 2 b) 3 c) 4 d) 5

3 Answer the following questions, if necessary consult Lessons 24–30 of your Textbook IV and Lessons 5, 12–14 of your Textbook V.

1. When did the Romans come to England for the first time?
2. What was the original name of the British capital? And how many people lived there by the year 400?
3. When did the Romans leave Britain?
4. When did William the Conqueror come to England from Normandy? Why did he build the White Tower in the Tower of London?

5. Where did the Great Fire of London start? How long did it last? How big was the part of the city destroyed by the fire?
6. What caused the Great Fire of London?
7. What is the official name of Great Britain now?
8. What do people mean when they say "Great Britain"?
9. What parts does Great Britain consist of and what are their capitals?
10. What do we call the narrowest part of the English Channel?
11. The people who were born in Britain are English, aren't they?
12. What does the Union Jack look like and what does it symbolize?
13. What is understood by the Commonwealth? What do you know about it?
14. Who does the power in the country belong to?
15. Who makes laws in the country?

4 After doing ex. 1 and ex. 2, decide who in your class knows the country and its people best. Let him/her be a visiting professor from London and ask him/her:

- 1) what part of London he likes most of all and why;
- 2) what the Tower of London used to be and what it is now;
- 3) why Londoners keep black ravens in the Tower of London;
- 4) what place in London is believed to be its geographical centre;
- 5) where the Queen lives;
- 6) why the clock on one of the towers of the Houses of Parliament is called Big Ben;
- 7) how often people can hear the sound of Big Ben;
- 8) if tourists can get into the Houses of Parliament and watch the sessions of Parliament;
- 9) what the difference between the House of Lords and the House of Commons is;
- 10) what Poets' Corner is and in what London church it can be found;

- 11) why British people speak so much about the weather;
- 12) in what way the British people differ from people on the Continent.

LET US READ

- 5 Read to get more information about British festivals.¹

Traditional games on Halloween Night are usually difficult, such as trying to get an apple from a bucket² of water without using hands or trying to find a coin in a bowl³ full of flour.

On New Year's Eve, people used to take a soaking⁴ in the fountains in Trafalgar Square.

The Christmas tree which is put in Trafalgar Square for Christmas is always a present from Norway.

On Christmas day the Queen gives her traditional Christmas speech to the UK and the Commonwealth on television and radio.

At Easter time, the British often give their children chocolate Easter eggs, which are opened and eaten on Easter Sunday.

- 6 A Russian girl, Olga, comes to Britain on the 30th of October. She is going to stay with an English family. Alice, the eldest daughter, is going to take Olga to a Halloween party. Read their dialogue and say why Olga is so surprised.



HALLOWEEN PARTY

Olga: Alice, it can be a stupid question, but I'm afraid I don't know much about Halloween. What is it like?

Alice: I'm sure you'll enjoy it. Such parties are usually great fun. People dress up in strange costumes and pretend they're ghosts and witches.

¹ a festival ['festivl] — праздник

² a bucket ['bʌkɪt] — ведро

³ a bowl [bəʊl] — миска

⁴ to take a soaking ['səʊkɪŋ] — окунаться

- Olga:* Oh... are you sure I'm going to like it? It sounds very unusual.
- Alice:* Don't be silly, we'll play games and dance and laugh a lot. And you know what, when the party is over, we'll put on white sheets and knock on our neighbours' doors asking if they would like a "trick" or "treat".
- Olga:* Trick or treat? What d'you mean?
- Alice* (*laughing*): Nothing dangerous. If they give us a treat — some sweets, nuts or cakes — we'll say "thank you" and go away. But if they don't we'll play a trick on them.
- Olga:* What? A trick? What shall we do?
- Alice:* We'll make a lot of noise and throw flour on their front doorstep!
- Olga:* Wow!¹
- Alice:* But can you help me to get ready for the party?
- Olga:* Of course I will. What shall I do?
- Alice:* We'll cut an ugly face in a pumpkin and put a candle inside. It will shine through the eye holes. Then we'll take the pumpkin to the party to decorate the hall.
- Olga:* How interesting! I've never heard about this holiday before. We don't have it in Russia.
- Alice:* You just wait! On the 5th of November I'll take you to see a Guy Fawkes Night.

7 Imagine that that very night Olga wrote a letter to her family where she told them what she had learned about Halloween. Name 10 things she had learned about that holiday. Begin with: "Alice told me...".

EXAMPLE: Alice told me she was going to take me to a Halloween party.

LET US TALK

8 Work in pairs. Make up two dialogues: a) about Guy Fawkes Night, b) about Maslenitsa in Russia. One of you is a Russian student, the other comes from Britain.

¹ Wow! [wau] — Ух ты! (возглас удивления и/или восторга)

9 You are going to have a quiz on the topic "Britain. Then and Now". Get ready to give the most important information on these:

- 1) the geographical position of the UK;
- 2) the political system in the UK (the Queen and Parliament);
- 3) the Romans in Britain;
- 4) the Great Fire of London;
- 5) London, the capital and the heart of Great Britain;
- 6) London's places of interest;
- 7) British traditions and holidays.

LET US WRITE

10 Do ex. 3, ex. 6 in writing.

11 Write a paragraph on one of the topics from ex. 9.

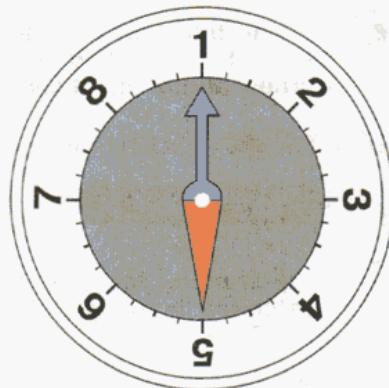
UNIT 8 ENGLAND



LET US REVIEW

1 Look at the compass and give a name to all the numbers.

Number 1 is the north.
Number 2 is the northeast.
Number 3 is
Number 4 is the southeast.
Number 5 is
Number 6 is
Number 7 is
Number 8 is the northwest.



2 Give a full name to the following.

SE, S, SW, NW, NE, N, E, W.

EXAMPLE: SE stands for the southeast.

FOCUS

A. in the north
(northwest)
in the south
(southeast)
in the east
(northeast)
in the west
(southwest)

B. to the north of
to the south of
to the east of
to the west of

to the northwest of
to the southeast of
to the northeast of
to the southwest of

St. Petersburg is **in** the northwest of Russia.

Moscow is **to** the southeast of St. Petersburg.

3 a) Look at the map of Russia and say where these cities are situated.

EXAMPLE: Magadan is **in** the northeast of Russia.

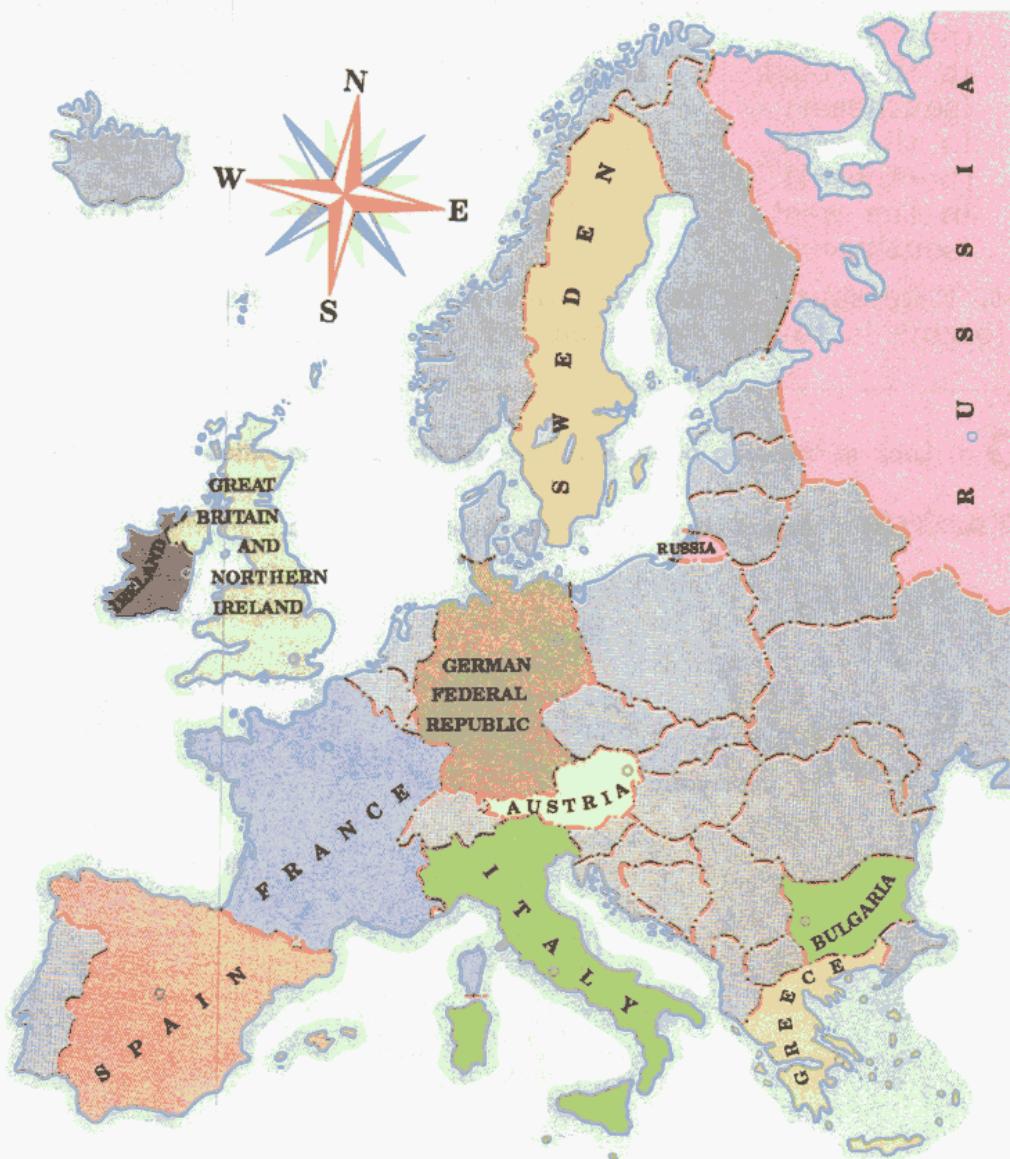


b) Compare the position of these cities towards each other.

EXAMPLE: Vladivostok is to the south of Magadan.

4 Look at the map of Europe and say where these countries are situated.

EXAMPLE: France is in the southwest of Europe.



- 5** a) You can see the names of the eleven European countries on the map of ex. 4. Match the countries and the names of their capitals.

Stockholm ['stɔkhəʊm], Rome, Paris ['pærɪs], Moscow, Sofia ['səʊfiə], Vienna [vi'enə], Berlin, London, Madrid, Athens ['æθənz], Dublin ['dʌblɪn].

- b) Say where these countries are in relation to¹ each other.

EXAMPLE: Germany is to the north of Italy, to the northwest of France, to the southeast of Sweden, to the west of Russia, to the southeast of Britain and to the northeast of Spain.

- 6** Imagine you're in a geography class, look at the map (ex. 4), choose a country and compare its position with three or four other countries. Use the example of ex. 5 as a model.

FOCUS

its

it's=it is

1. Oxford and **its** university [ju:nɪ'vɜ:sətɪ] are famous all over Europe.
2. The National Gallery and **its** collection of pictures are known all over the world.
3. Russia is a large country. **Its** capital is Moscow.

1. Oxford is a beautiful city and **it's** very old.
2. Look, **it's** the National Gallery in front of us.
3. I like Moscow, **it's** a nice city.

- 7** Make the right choice: **it's** or **its**.

1. Spain is situated in the southwest of Europe. What is ... capital? ... capital is Madrid.
2. Scotland is famous for ... beauty.
3. ... easy to find Finland on the map: ... in the north of Europe.
4. Moscow is a very old city, ... history goes back to the 12th century.
5. India is washed by the Indian Ocean, ... climate is very hot.

¹ in relation to — по отношению к

6. You can't see the top of this mountain from here because ... so high.
7. Paris is the capital of France, ... situated on the river Seine [sein].
8. St. Paul's Cathedral is in the City. ... beautiful columns can be seen above the high buildings.

LET US READ AND LEARN

FOCUS

English Participle

Participle I: **Ving**

Participle II: **Ved/V₃**

playing visiting falling

played visited fallen

1. I like to watch your children **playing** happily together.
2. Mr Johnson, a **visiting** professor from London, arrived yesterday.
3. We looked at the **falling** leaves and thought the summer was over.

1. The game **played** yesterday was the best of all games **played** this season.
2. The museum **visited** by the schoolchildren didn't impress them.
3. The schoolchildren were taking the **fallen** leaves away.



8 Give English equivalents for these.

Смеющаяся девочка, играющие дети, падающие листья, улыбающаяся женщина, летящая птица, плывающая утка.

9 a) Read the word combinations and give their Russian equivalents.

The girl talking to Tom, the plane flying in the sky, the bird singing in the tree, the children swimming in the sea, factories producing food, people living in towns.

b) Match the two parts of these sentences.

1. The girl talking to Tom ...
2. There were many clouds and we could not see...
3. The bird singing in the tree...
4. Let's get up early tomorrow and go and watch...
5. The children swimming in the sea...

- a) is not a pigeon, dear.
- b) the rising sun.
- c) is his sister.
- d) were laughing loudly.
- e) the plane flying in the sky.

10 Give English equivalents for these.

Оконченное письмо, написанное стихотворение, забытое правило, разрушенный город, приготовленный обед, разбитая тарелка.

11 a) Read the word combinations and give their Russian equivalents.

The story told by my granny, the pictures taken in London, mistakes made in the test, the present bought for my brother, dinners cooked by mother, the ruined castles, the letters received yesterday.

b) Match the two parts of the sentences.

1. I have brought you...
2. The teacher was surprised at Tim's...
3. I can tell you...
4. Vegetables cooked by mother...
5. The letters received yesterday...

- a) the pictures taken in London.
- b) should be translated immediately.
- c) are always tasty.
- d) the story told by my granny.
- e) mistakes made in the test.

12 Complete the sentences choosing the right participle.

1. I could not read the names of some of the cities (*showing*, *shown*) on the map. 2. The channel (*separating*, *separated*) Great Britain from the continent is called the English

Channel. 3. What is this part of the country (*calling, called*)? 4. Parts of the Great Wall of China (*building, built*) in ancient times can still be seen. 5. Potatoes (*bringing, brought*) to Europe from America have become very popular. 6. What do we call the continent (*discovering, discovered*) by Columbus? 7. Many ancient towns had strong walls (*defending, defended*) their inhabitants from enemies. 8. Most people (*living, lived*) in Scotland are called Scots.

13 a) Read and guess what the underlined words mean.

1. Lowlands are low-lying lands and highlands are lands in the mountains.
2. A waterfall is a place where a river falls from a high place to a lower place.
3. At the sea there were a lot of holidaymakers, most of them were families with little children.
4. I was born in Moscow, so Moscow is my birthplace.
5. Pirates ['paɪərəts] are sailors who attack other ships and steal things from them.
6. From his position on the hill he could see the city lying far away.
7. Oxford and Cambridge are the most famous universities [ju:n'i'vez:sətiz] in Britain. After school she wants to go to university.
8. A ruler is a person who rules a country. Who is the real ruler of the country?

14 b) Look these words up to make sure you have guessed right.

Read the words, look them up and then study the word combinations and sentences to know how to use them.

to admire [əd'maɪə] (*v*): to admire the flowers, to admire a person for his or her courage. Did he admire our garden? I don't admire this singer as much as you do.

scenery ['si:nəri] (*n, always singular*): beautiful scenery, countryside scenery, to enjoy the scenery. When you speak about the scenery of a place you mean its hills, rivers, forests and so on.

- a **plain** [pleɪn] (*n*): a grassy plain, the great plains of America, a large plain, in the open plain. A plain is a large area of land with very few trees on it. “The rain in Spain falls mainly on the plain.”
- a **meadow** ['medəʊ] (*n*): in the meadow, a green meadow, a meadow covered in/with tulips. A meadow is a field which has grass and flowers growing in it. The smell of spring flowers was coming from the meadow. Have you ever seen a meadow in spring?
- a **valley** ['væli] (*n*): a low valley, a valley in the mountains, down in the valley, a lily of the valley. What is a valley? It is a long, narrow piece of land between hills, it often has a river running through it. The civilization of Egypt was born in the Nile valley.
- a **hedge** [hedʒ] — **hedges** ['hedʒɪz] (*n*): a green hedge, a high hedge, a low hedge, a hedge round a garden, to be separated by a hedge. Why did you decide to put a hedge around your garden? England looks like one great park with its old trees, green meadows and hedges. A beautiful hedge separated the two fields.
- to **excite** [ɪk'sait] (*v*): to excite people, to excite the audience, to be excited by the news (book, film, performance, etc.). The plan of the party excited us. The circus tickets will excite the children. He was so excited by his birthday present he could hardly sleep.
exciting [ɪk'saɪtɪŋ] (*adj*): an exciting story, an exciting idea, exciting news, an exciting moment. A trip to the mountains wasn't a very exciting idea at first. How exciting! What exciting news you've brought!
- to **attract** [ə'trækt] (*v*): to attract people, to attract animals, to be attracted by the scenery (the smell, the picture). The South of France attracts a lot of holidaymakers every summer. I was attracted by her nice smile.
- attractive** [ə'træktɪv] (*adj*): an attractive girl, an attractive child, an attractive face. I don't think he's attractive at all. After we painted the house it looked very attractive.
- flat** [flæt], **flatter**, **(the) flattest** (*adj*): a flat plate, a flat cap, a flat field, a flat countryside, as flat as a pancake. The countryside is very flat here: there are no

hills at all. People used to think that the world was flat, now we know that it is round. Holland is a very flat country; some people say it is as flat as a pancake.

rest [rest] (*n*): the rest of the books, the rest of the apples, the rest of the stories, the rest of the people. There are ten apples on the plate, three are green and the rest (of them) are red. John and I are going to play tennis, what are the rest of you going to do?

a shape [ʃeɪp] (*n*): clouds of different shapes, the shape of a man's nose, in the shape of a heart. What's the shape of the table? Is it round? She baked a cake in the shape of a heart. The small silver box had a square shape.

to connect [kə'nekt] (*v*): to connect two things, to be connected by something. The bridge across the river connects the old and the new parts of the city. The two towns were connected by a railway.

15 Look through ex. 13, ex. 14 and choose the words to fit these categories:
1) places; 2) people and their occupations.

16 Name them.

- 1) 3—5 things that can be: **a**) attractive; **b**) exciting;
- 2) 3—5 universities that you know;
- 3) 3—5 things that can: **a**) excite people; **b**) attract people;
c) connect people or things;
- 4) 3 things that can be in the shape of: **a**) a heart;
b) a square; **c**) an oval ['əʊvl];
- 5) 5 things that you really admire.

17 Listen to the dialogue, ☰ 28, and read it, then act it out.

A HOLIDAY IN SCOTLAND

Mr Adams: Well, kids, I've got wonderful news for you!

Duncan: What is it, Daddy? Are we going to the circus?

Liz: I know, we are going to the zoo!

Mr Adams: No, kids. It's much better. You've been so good this school year that I decided to take you on a holiday.

- Duncan:* Wow! Where are we going? Is Mummy coming too?
- Mr Adams:* Of course she is. We're going to the Highlands of Scotland, my birthplace.
- Duncan:* Great! Dennis was there last summer with his parents and he loved it.
- Liz:* I think that's terrific, Dad! You know, Miss Hunter, our geography teacher, told us only yesterday that the Highlands of Scotland are famous for their scenery and people from all over the world go there to admire it.
- Mr Adams:* Miss Hunter is quite right. There is nothing like the high mountains, deep valleys and grassy plains of my bonny¹ Scotland. My heart's in the Highlands as Robert Burns² wrote. You know, when I speak of Scotland I become something of a poet myself.
- Liz:* Oh yes, we know that. When are we going? Where are we going to stay? In a hotel? How are we going to get there? Shall I take my skis? Is there any snow? Is it cold in Scotland in summer? Oh, Dad, it's so exciting!

LET US READ

18 Learn to read these words, ☰ 29.

Bath [ba:θ], Birmingham ['bɜ:mɪŋəm], Brighton ['braɪtn], Bristol ['brɪstl], Cambridge ['keɪmbrɪdʒ], the County of Kent [ðə ,kaʊntɪ əv 'kent], Dover ['dəʊvə], the Fens (area) [ðə 'fenz], Hadrian's Wall [,heɪdrɪənz 'wɔ:l], Heathrow (airport) ['hi:θrəʊ], the Lake District [ðə 'leɪk ,dɪstrɪkt], Land's End [,lændz 'end], Liverpool ['livəpu:l], Manchester ['mæntʃɪstə], the Midlands [ðə 'mɪdləndz], Newcastle-upon-Tyne [,nju:kə:sl əpən'taɪn], Northern Ireland [,nɔ:ðən 'aɪələnd], Oxford

¹ bonny — красивый

² Robert Burns (1759—1796) — a Scottish poet who wrote hundreds of songs and poems, mainly on country life, love, and national pride

[*'bksfəd*], Sheffield [*'ʃefi:ld*], the Southeast [*ðə 'sauθ'i:st*], the Southwest [*ðə 'sauθ'west*], Stonehenge [*'stəʊn'hendʒ*], Stratford-upon-Avon [*straetfəd əpən 'eivn*], the Thames [*ðə temz*], Wales [*weɪlz*], York [*jɔ:k*].

- 19 Choose the names of the cities from the list in ex. 18, find and show them on the map. Read the names aloud.



- 20 Read the text, give the names of the five principal parts of the country described in the text and show them on the map.

DISCOVER BRITAIN: ENGLAND

30. The United Kingdom is very small compared with many other countries in the world. However there are only nine other countries with more people, and London is the world's seventh biggest city. When you travel about the country you can see how the scenery changes right in front of your eyes. Highlands turn into lowlands, forests and hills turn into meadows and plains very quickly. It's hard

to believe, but in Great Britain one can find practically any type of scenery. Often what people first notice about Britain, especially if they arrive by plane, is the green of the fields, hedges and trees. Britain is an unusually beautiful country!

We want to take you on an exciting journey through the whole country from Scotland and Northern Ireland to England and Wales. We'll begin our journey with England, the largest part of the UK, visiting its regions: the Southeast, the Southwest, East Anglia, the Midlands and the North of England.

The Southeast is a highly populated region of England; there is a lot of industry near the Thames and there are a lot of roads and motorways. London, the capital of the UK, and such historical cities as Windsor, Dover and Brighton are situated here. When people travel to Britain by sea or air they usually arrive in the Southeast, for this is where the main passenger ports and airports are. Heathrow Airport, one of the world's busiest airports is about 33 km west of central London. However, there is still attractive countryside in the Southeast. The County of Kent situated here is known as the garden of England. The Southeast is famous for its resorts, Brighton is, probably, the best known of them.

The Southwest is the region where the main activity is farming. Although there are some very big farms, most of them are small family farms where dairy products are produced. The Southwest used to be known for its pirates. The romantic past makes it a popular place for artists, writers and holidaymakers. The two principal cities of the region



are Bristol and Bath. If you want to see the famous Stonehenge, one of the remarkable historic places in the UK, you should also come here. The most westerly point of Great Britain "Land's End" is also in the Southwest.

East Anglia is very flat and it is another farming region. It has beautiful cities, such as Cambridge, with fine historic buildings. The part of East Anglia called the Fens consists of miles of flat land with almost no trees or hedges. It used to be partly covered by the sea and now produces good harvests.

Oliver Cromwell, an English general and politician (1599—1658) who was leader of the army against King Charles I in the Civil War and later became Lord Protector of England, was born in the Fens area. East Anglia is isolated from the rest of Britain because of its position away from the main national roads and because of its shape: it is more than half surrounded by the sea.

The Midlands, known as the heart of England, is the largest industrial part in the country. The most important industrial cities are Manchester, Sheffield, Liverpool, which is one of Britain's big ports, and Birmingham. The two famous Midlands cities, Stratford-upon-Avon and Oxford are connected with English culture: Stratford is the birthplace of the great William Shakespeare and Oxford is famous for its university.

The North of England has some of the wildest and loneliest parts of the country, but also some of the busiest industrial cities. Here you can find deep valleys, rivers and waterfalls, hills and mountains. This part of the country is rich in coal which is important for the region's¹ industry.

The main attractions of the North of England are certainly the Lake District, the cities of York and Newcastle-upon-Tyne. Many tourists come over especially to look at the ruins of Hadrian's Wall, a stone wall built across the North of England by the order of the Roman ruler Hadrian to defend the Northern border of Roman Britain from the Scottish tribes.

¹ a region [ri:dʒən] — район

21 Look through the text again and answer these questions.

1. How big is London compared with other cities?
2. Where do people usually arrive when they travel to Britain by sea or air? Why?
3. What are the principal cities in the Southeast?
4. What county is called the “garden of England”?
5. What is the Southeast famous for?
6. Why do people find the Southwest attractive?
7. Why is Land’s End called that way?
8. Why do you think tourists often come to Cambridge?
9. Where was Oliver Cromwell from? What can you say about the man?
10. What are the most important industrial cities in England?
11. What is Stratford-upon-Avon famous for?
12. What are the main attractions of the North of England?
13. What do you know about Hadrian’s Wall?

22 Match the words in the two columns to say what these places are famous for.

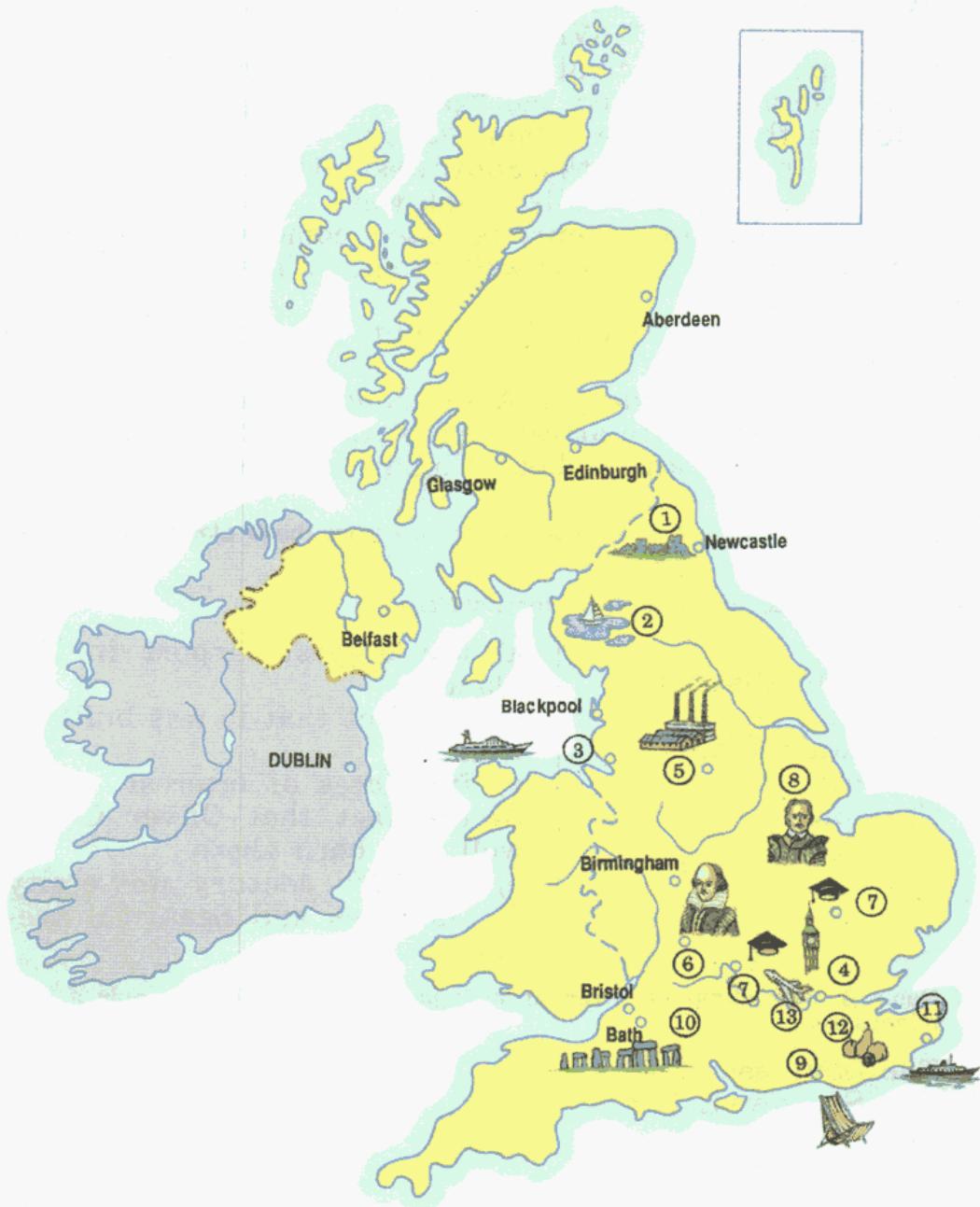
EXAMPLE: London is famous for its places of interest.

- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| 1) London | a) the biggest airport in England |
| 2) the Lake District | b) the fact that it was built by Romans |
| 3) Oxford | c) its places of interest |
| 4) Hadrian’s Wall | d) the fact that Oliver Cromwell was born there |
| 5) Heathrow | e) its 12th century university |
| 6) the Fens | f) its lakes and beautiful scenery |

23 Name 3 facts about each region in England, consult the text only if it is necessary.

- 1) The Southeast ???
- 2) The Southwest ???
- 3) East Anglia ???
- 4) The Midlands ???
- 5) The North of England ???

24 Guess what the names of the places marked with the numbers are, check yourselves with the help of the tape,  31.



LET US TALK

- 25 These are some facts about the five regions of Great Britain. Match the facts with the names of the regions and describe them.

The North of England	East Anglia	
The Midlands	The Southeast	The Southwest

1. A highly populated region, a lot of industry near the Thames, important historical cities, the main passenger ports and airports, attractive countryside, the garden of England, world famous resorts.
2. A very flat area with a lot of farms, Oliver Cromwell's birthplace, the main national roads, more than half of the area is surrounded by the sea, the famous University of Cambridge, the Fens.
3. Another farming region with a lot of small family farms, dairy products, used to be known for pirates, the principal cities — Bristol, Bath, the famous Stonehenge, the most westerly point of Great Britain.
4. An area with a lot of busy industrial cities and many wild and lonely parts, rich in coal, the Lake District, the ruins of Hadrian's Wall, beautiful valleys, rivers, waterfalls and mountains.
5. The heart of England, the largest industrial area,¹ the birthplace of William Shakespeare, the university city of Oxford, the industrial cities of Birmingham, Manchester and Sheffield, the big sea port of Liverpool.

- 26 Look at the map (ex. 19), imagine that you are travelling from Newcastle-upon-Tyne to Land's End to see the country and admire the scenery. Choose a route² you want to take and explain your choice. Say what method of travelling you will use.

¹ an area ['eəriə] — район

² a route ['ru:t] — маршрут

EXAMPLE: I'm going to travel by car because it's the most comfortable way to see the country. I think I'll visit ... because

27 Imagine you have a chance to stay in England for two weeks. Which of the five regions will you choose and why? Explain your choice in 5–6 phrases.

LET US WRITE

28 Do ex. 7, ex. 9 (b), ex. 11 (b), ex. 12 in writing.

29 Write what these cities are famous for: *Sheffield, Liverpool, Stratford-upon-Avon, Oxford, Manchester, Cambridge, Birmingham, London*.

EXAMPLE: London is famous for its fine historic buildings.

30 Express the same in English.

- a) 1. Оксфорд — старый английский университетский город. Он расположен в Центральных графствах Великобритании (The Midlands) к северо-западу от Лондона. Оксфордский университет основан в XII веке.
2. Шеффилд известен своей сталелитейной (steel) промышленностью. Он находится к востоку от Манчестера.
3. Брайтон — курортный город, расположенный на юге Англии.
4. Очень интересно посетить графство Кент (The County of Kent). Туристы всегда восхищаются его великолепными садами. Графство Кент называют «сад Англии».
5. Озёрный край (the Lake District) Англии расположен на северо-западе страны. Это очень романтическое место, известное своими долинами, горами, озёрами и водопадами. Озёрный край связан с именами поэтов Озёрной школы (the Lake Poets), которые жили в этом районе и писали о нём.
6. Аэропорт Хитроу расположен в 33 км к западу от Лондона. Это самый крупный аэропорт Великобритании.
- b) 1. Юго-восток Англии известен своими плоскими равнинами, где расположено много ферм.

- Долины и луга Шотландии всегда привлекают множество туристов.
- Живые изгороди в Англии разделяют поля.
- Английский пейзаж характеризуется (to be famous for) своими живыми изгородями и зелёными лугами.
- Я восхищаюсь людьми, которые путешествуют, открывают новые земли и исследуют их.
- Мой папа уже побывал в Северной Ирландии, но еще не видел других частей Великобритании.
- Знаменитые курортные города Англии расположены на юго-востоке.

31 Look at the words again and get ready to write a spelling quiz on them.



lowlands, highlands, a waterfall, a holidaymaker, a birthplace, a pirate, a position, a university, a ruler, to admire, scenery, a plain, a meadow, a valley, a hedge, to excite, exciting, to attract, attractive, flat, the rest of, a shape, to connect

LET US LISTEN AND DISCUSS

32 a) Make sure that you know these words:

a neighbour ['neibə] — сосед, соседка

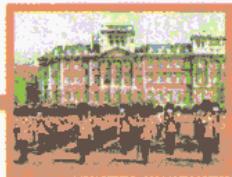
own [əvn] — собственный

as — поскольку (As it was cold we decided to stay at home.)

b) Listen to the tape, **32**, and answer the questions.

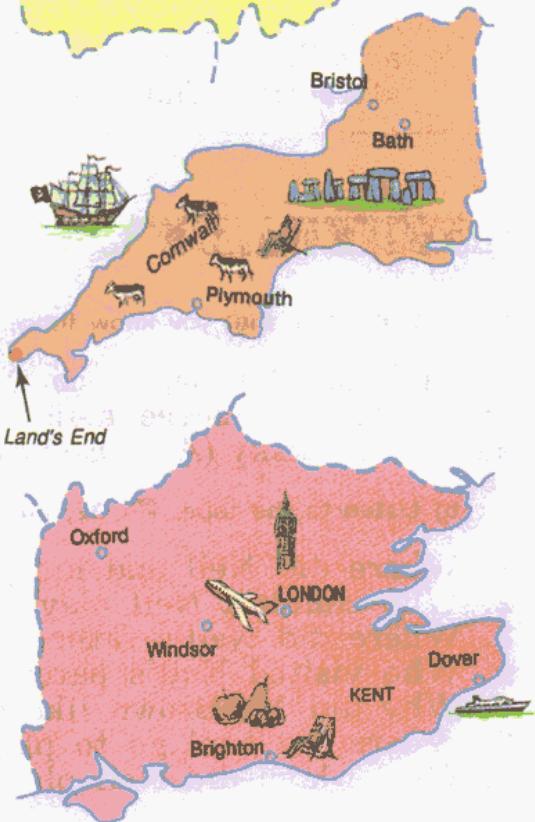
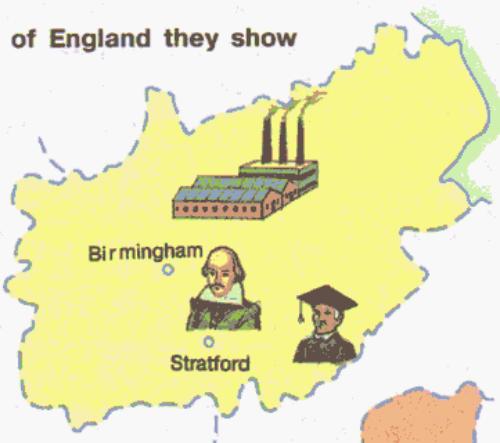
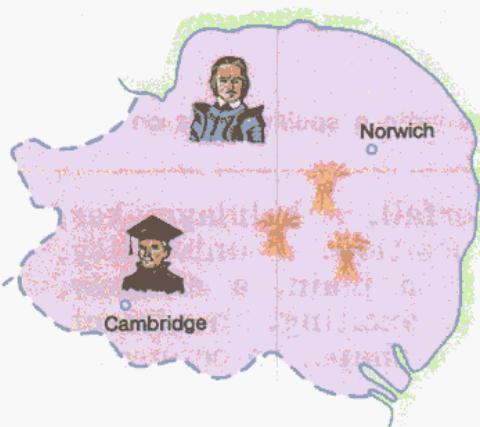
- Where did Neil and his parents live?
- Why couldn't Neil play with other children?
- Where did Neil's father work?
- Who visited Neil's parents from time to time?
- Why did Mr Brown like to talk to Neil?
- Where did Neil go to play with his ball?
- With whom did Neil play? How did he play this game?

UNIT 9 ENGLAND



LET US REVIEW

- 1 Look at the pictures. Say what parts of England they show and describe these areas.



2 Say what these places are connected with.

EXAMPLE: Liverpool is connected with trade¹ as it is one of the biggest ports in England.

Stratford-upon-Avon	education
Sheffield	history
Brighton	theatre
Liverpool	culture
The Lake District	industry
Cambridge	farming
Dover	trade
London	holidaymaking

3 Say what places in England attract crowds of tourists and why.

EXAMPLE: The Lake District attracts crowds of tourists because it has very beautiful scenery.

4 Look at the picture. There is an apple, a banana, a cabbage, a potato, a tomato, a cucumber, a carrot and an orange on the table. Where are the rest of them?

EXAMPLE: The rest of the apples are in the box.



¹ trade [treɪd] — торговля

What a warm day!
 What a strong wind!
 What a beautiful river!
 What a lovely hedge!
 What an old university!

What nice scenery!
 What cold water!
 What nasty weather!
 What deep knowledge!
 What short hair!

What dangerous pirates!
 What long roads!
 What exciting stories!
 What tasty potatoes!
 What attractive faces!

- 5** Imagine that you are travelling about England and you admire everything that you see around. Make up true sentences and express what you feel.

What	(a/an)	exciting	news!
		attractive	work!
		deep	scenery!
		romantic	valleys!
		beautiful	meadow!
		green	plain!
		flat	weather!
		great	knowledge!
		long	information!
		unusual	cities!

- 6** Express the same in English.

1. Какая сухая погода!
2. Какие важные новости!
3. Какой горький апельсин!
4. Какая волнующая мысль!
5. Какие красивые длинные волосы!
6. Какие свежие овощи!
7. Какой крупный картофель!
8. Какая сладкая морковь!
9. Какой необычный пейзаж!
10. Какой влажный климат!

7 "Tesco" is the name of the well-known supermarket in England. Look at Tesco's prices and say what Mary, Andy, Tim and May can buy with the money they have. And you?

EXAMPLE: With £5 and 90p I've got I can buy 100 g of Nescafé¹ coffee, one lb (pound) of English Cox's apples, 1 kg (kilo) of chicken and 2 kg (kilos) of red potatoes.

TESCO'S PRICES

CHICKEN.....	£2.99 per 1 kg ²
RED POTATOES.....	£0.75 per 2 kg ³
NESCAFÉ COFFEE.....	£1.69 per 100 g ³
CORNFLAKES.....	99p per 750 g ⁴
COKE.....	£1.19 for 2 l ⁴
ENGLISH COX'S APPLES.....	38p per 1 lb ⁵
CABBAGES.....	39p each
PORK SAUSAGES.....	£1.29 per 454 g
APPLE PIE.....	£1.20 each
FRUIT YOGURT.....	20p for a carton
BREAD.....	78p for a loaf

||||||||||||||||||||||||||
Mary has got £5
Andy has got £20
Tim has got £1.50
May has got £2.30
You have got...

8 Say where you can buy them.

EXAMPLE: I can buy potatoes at the greengrocer's.

fish	beef	at the grocer's
flour	fresh milk	at the butcher's
a cake	sausages	at the fishmonger's
sour cream	a carton of cream	(at the fish shop)
potatoes	a pound of bacon	at the greengrocer's
a loaf of	a tin of fruit	at the supermarket
bread	a bar of chocolate	at the dairy
carrots		at the confectionery
yogurt		at the baker's

¹ Nescafé ['neskæfeɪ] — сорт кофе

² per 1 kg [pɜ: 'wʌn 'kɪləgræm] — за килограмм

³ per 100 g [pɜ: 'wʌn 'hʌndrəd 'græmz] — за 100 граммов

⁴ for 2 l [fər 'tu: 'lɪ:təz] — за 2 литра

⁵ per 1 lb [pɜ: 'wʌn 'paʊnd] — за 1 фунт (фунт — единица веса)

9 In these dialogues the replies are all mixed up. Put them in the right order and act out the dialogues.

- a) — Hello. Can I have a tin of fish soup, please?
— No, thanks.
— Here you are. Anything else?
— One pound ten, please.
— Thanks.
— Thank you.
- b) — Can I have a hamburger and a cup of coffee, please?
— Thanks. How much is that?
— Good morning.
— OK. Here you are.
— Morning. Can I help you?
— Thank you.
— Three pounds twenty.
- c) — Hello.
— Oh, I forget, I need a plastic bag, please.
— One kilo of English Cox's apples, please.
— Thank you.
— Here you are.
— Hello.
— They're 90 p for a kilo.
— They are 20 p.
— Here's the money and thanks a lot.
— Goodbye.
— How much are they?
- d) — All right.
— Yes, two cartons.
— Bill, would you go and get some rice?
— Yogurt?
— Shall I get anything else?
— Yes. How much shall I get?
— Oh, yes, get a bottle of milk — or perhaps two —
and yes, some yogurt too.
— Get one packet.

LET US READ AND LEARN

FOCUS

such

1. It is **such** a good idea.
2. It is **such** exciting news.
3. These are **such** flat areas.
4. My granny makes **such** tasty toast.

so

1. The idea is **so** good.
2. The news is **so** exciting.
3. Many areas in East Anglia are **so** flat.
4. The toast today is **so** tasty.

10 Complete the sentences using *such* or *so*.

1. The day was ... exciting.
2. It is ... a good idea.
3. Her health is ... poor.
4. Life in the Highlands is ... lonely.
5. The weather in Russia is becoming ... changeable.
6. You shouldn't make ... silly jokes.
7. It's ... nasty weather today!
8. She spends a lot of money on ... expensive books.
9. They have always been ... happy together.
10. My baby brother is ... a little dear.

FOCUS

Exclamatory Sentences

What ...!

What a brave officer he is!
What a peaceful country it is!
What an expensive present it was!
What an exciting trip it has been!
What clean water it was!
What fresh air it is!
What polite girls they are!
What great adventures they will be!

How ...!

How brave the officer is!
How peaceful the country is!
How expensive the present was!
How exciting the trip has been!
How clean the water was!
How fresh the air is!
How polite the girls are!
How great the adventures will be!

11 Choose one of the word combinations from the word box and give a suitable answer.

EXAMPLE: — Look, I've bought some flowers for mum.
— What beautiful roses! Oh! How beautiful they are!

a tasty cake, a clever boy, a nice day, unusual scenery,
a boring party, green fields, dirty trousers, interesting
books

1. Look at Pete's trousers.
2. David has written the test very well.
3. There was no music at the party and he couldn't dance.
4. Look at this scenery. I have never seen anything like that.
5. We've got some new books for the library.
6. Do you remember the green fields of East Anglia?
7. Have you tasted my cake?
8. The sun is shining again.

12 a) Read and guess what the underlined words mean.

1. That was an official [ə'fiʃl] ceremony ['seriməni] and all the ladies were wearing long dresses.
2. What is the Queen's official residence ['rezidəns] in London?
3. What is the main avenue ['ævənu:] of the city?
4. Have you ever seen any procession [prə'seʃn] in which the Queen took part?
5. Public ['pʌblɪk] processions are important events of the city life.
6. Cheburashka is a famous character ['kærəktə] in many children's cartoons in Russia.
7. Queens and kings are monarchs ['mɒnəks].
8. Men are often interested in politics ['pɒlɪtɪks].
9. Who can control [kən'trəʊl] that?
10. A throne [θrəʊn] is a seat where monarchs sit during official ceremonies.

11. Have you read any tragedies ['trædʒədɪz] by William Shakespeare?
12. He is not fond of classical ['klæsɪkl] music.
13. Britain was a great empire ['empaɪə] at the beginning of the 20th century.

b) Look these words up to make sure you have guessed right.

13 Read the words, look them up and study the word combinations and sentences to know how to use them.

- to own** [əʊn] (*v*): to own a house, to own a factory, to own a pet. This house is mine; I own it. Who owns this land?
- a crown** [kraʊn] (*n*): to wear the crown, a crown of gold. A crown is the head dress of gold worn by a king or a queen. Kings and queens wear crowns at official ceremonies.
- to crown** (*v*): to be crowned. Where was Queen Elizabeth II crowned?
- to reign** [reɪn] (*v*): to reign over / in the country, the reigning monarch. In Britain the monarch reigns but has no real power.
- reign** (*n*): the longest reign in history. What do you know about the reign of King Henry VIII? The reign of a king or queen is the time during which he or she rules.
- to defeat** [dɪ'fi:t] (*v*): to defeat the enemy, to defeat the army, to be defeated. The fleet of France and Spain was defeated by Admiral Nelson in the battle of Trafalgar.
- undefeated**: King Arthur and his men were undefeated.
- defeat** (*n*): Six wins and three defeats for the team. I never think about the possibility of defeat.
- to remind** [ri'maɪnd] (*v*): to remind sb of sth, to remind sb to do sth. Do I have to remind you about it again? Remind me to answer that letter. He reminds me of his brother. This song reminds us of France. That reminds me ...¹ That reminds me I must give some milk to the cat.

¹ That reminds me ... — Да, кстати...

to touch [tʌtʃ] (*v*): to touch sth. Don't touch the kettle: it's very hot. One of the branches was just touching the water. Touch wood. Some people say "Touch wood", and often touch a piece of wood, not to have bad luck.

touching ['tʌtʃɪŋ] (*adj*): a touching story, a touching film. How touching!

a reason ['ri:zn] (*n*): reasons, the only reason, an important reason, a bad reason for sth. Give me your reasons for going there. The reason why I'm late is that I missed the bus. We have a good reason to believe that he is lying. We aren't going for the simple reason that we have no time.

14 Say what can be: 1) touching; 2) official; 3) public.

15 Make up word combinations with the new words and use them in sentences of your own (at least 10 sentences). Use the words from the box.

to own to defeat to touch to remind of

house	enemy	meeting	army
water	team	cottage	palace
baby	farm	words	holidays
fleet	wood	ground	feet

16 Complete the sentences with the words from ex. 12, ex 13.

1. There are several ... why we can't do that.
2. You can see royal ... in the Tower of London. They are made of gold, silver and stones and look so beautiful.
3. This photo always ... me of the happy days I spent in Greece.
4. Who is the main ... in "Cinderella"?
5. I am not interested in ... but my father is.
6. Who ... this bit of land?
7. Windsor Castle [,wɪnzə 'ka:sl] is the summer ... of the Queen.
8. My aunt often goes to concerts of ... music.
9. In Britain the Queen ... but does not rule.
10. The old lady's fingers ... the girl's hair.
11. When we lost the game last Friday, we all felt that it was a terrible
12. The ... home of the British Prime Minister is 10 Downing Street.

17 Listen to the tape, 33, read the dialogue, learn it by heart and act it out.

QUEEN'S PRESENTS

- Olga: What's that, Stephen? Have you got a new camera?
- Stephen: Yeah.¹ Just what I've always wanted. It's a Christmas present from my parents.
- Olga: Really? I'm so happy for you. I love presents. I wish I were a queen, then I would get² presents every day.
- Stephen: Believe it or not, Olga, but this is what happens in real life. I've read in a magazine that for Queen Elizabeth, for example, every day is Chrismas day.
- Olga: You're kidding!³
- Stephen: Not at all. And some of the presents are very unusual. Once an American hot dog firm sent her a big box of hot dogs with mustard.
- Olga: Oh, no! What did she do with them?
- Stephen: I have no idea. But it's clear that presents can be a big problem. Once, when the Queen returned from Canada she brought home a mink coat,⁴ a large statue of a horse, a pair of snowshoes, a motorboat, a piece of iron, a silver jug⁵ and a large painting of a power station.
- Olga: What does the Queen do with these presents? Where can she put a large statue?
- Stephen: There are 600 rooms in Buckingham Palace and the Queen tries to use all of her presents. And she gives many of her presents to museums, especially the British Museum.

¹ yeah = yes (*informal*)

² I wish I were a queen, then I would get... — Будь я королевой, я бы получала...

³ You're kidding! — Ты шутишь!

⁴ a mink [mɪŋk] coat — норковая шуба

⁵ a jug [dʒʌg] — кувшин

Olga: I'd so much like to go to London one day and visit the British Museum and see Buckingham Palace and Hyde Park and Big Ben.

Stephen: I hope your dream will come true.

LET US READ

18 Make sure that you can read these proper names, 34.

Buckingham Palace

Queen Elizabeth II

(the Second)

Trafalgar Square

St. James's Park

[sənt ,dʒeimzɪz 'pa:k]

Hyde Park (the Park)

Regent's Park [,rɪ:dʒənts 'pa:k]

London Zoo

Roman Catholic Church

[,rəʊmən ,kæθəlɪk 'tʃɜ:tʃ]

Parliament

the Crown

the Royal Family

the Church of England

the Spanish Armada

[,spænɪʃ ə:'ma:də]

the Royal Albert Hall

the Victoria

and Albert Museum

the British Throne

the Mall [mæl]

19 Read the text and say what new information about London you've got from it.

ROYAL LONDON

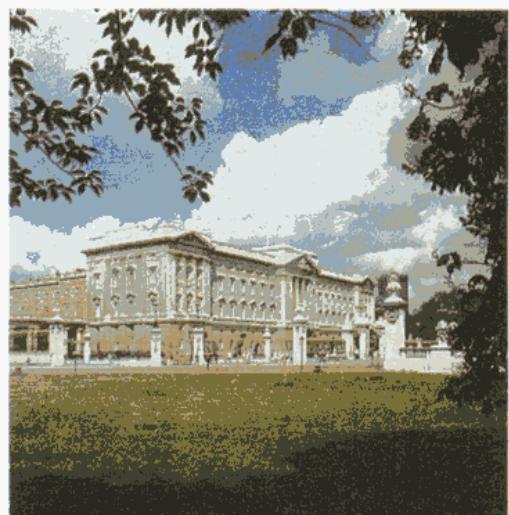
Many places in London are closely connected with the Crown. There are royal palaces, royal parks, roads and streets where beautiful ceremonies are held. The most important building is Buckingham Palace (the Palace), which is the official residence of Queen Elizabeth II. The Mall, a wide avenue used for royal processions runs from Trafalgar Square to Buckingham Palace through St. James's Park.

All together there are ten royal parks in and around London which are owned by the Crown. They are open to the public free of charge. Each park has its own character. Hyde Park, for example, used to be a hunting forest. Regent's Park was also a hunting place and is now the

home of London Zoo, and an open-air theatre which gives performances of Shakespeare's plays in summer.

Though nowadays the Queen reigns but does not rule, the Royal Family plays a very important role in the country. In the history of Britain there were certain Kings and Queens whose names are specially remembered in the country and are well-known in the whole world. One of them was King Henry VIII (1491—1547). Most people remember him only because he had six wives. But in fact he was a very important monarch. Under him Britain became independent of the Roman Catholic Church, it got richer and more powerful.

In 1534 Parliament named Henry head of the Church of England and gave the King all the power in the country.



Buckingham Palace



Henry VIII



Queen Elizabeth I



Queen Victoria



Queen Elizabeth II

Henry's daughter, Elizabeth (1533—1603) became the Queen in 1558. She never married and is remembered as a very popular and strong queen. She is known for saying "I know I have the body of a weak and feeble¹ woman, but I have the heart and stomach of a King ...". During her reign England became very important in European politics, the Spanish Armada was defeated, arts and especially the theatre developed, and the country became very powerful.

35. Another strong queen was Queen Victoria (1819—1901), whose monument you can see in front of Buckingham Palace. Queen Victoria came to the throne as a young woman in 1837 and reigned until her death in 1901. She ruled for the longest period in the English history, for 64 years! Victoria married a German, Prince Albert, but he died at the age of forty-two in 1861. That was a great tragedy for Queen Victoria. She left London and never lived in the city where she had been so happy with her husband and nine children (five sons and four daughters). But there are places in London that remind us of their love. One of them is the *Royal Albert Hall* — a very large concert hall where the best musicians of the world perform classical

¹ feeble ['fi:bł] — слабый

music. In front of the Albert Hall there is a monument to Prince Albert built by Queen Victoria. Another place is the *Victoria and Albert Museum (V & A)* with its rich collections of paintings and other works of art. The family life of Queen Victoria touched people's hearts. But this is not the only reason why Queen Victoria became very popular. During her reign Britain became a rich industrial country with a developed trade, an empire with a lot of colonies. Queen Victoria's great-great-granddaughter, Elizabeth II, is on the British throne now. The Queen's title in the United Kingdom is Elizabeth the Second, by the Grace of God, of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland and of Her other Realms and Territories Queen, Head of the Commonwealth, Defender of the Faith, etc. etc. etc.¹ ☺

20 Now you have new facts about London and its connection with the royal family. Can you answer these questions?

1. What palaces in London are connected with the Crown?
2. Which building is the official residence of Queen Elizabeth II?
3. Where are royal processions usually held in London?
4. How many royal parks are there in London? Can you name some of them? What can you say about them?
5. Why is it said that the Queen in Britain reigns but doesn't rule?
6. Which of the famous British queens and kings can you name?
7. Why is King Henry VIII remembered in the country and in the whole world? Can you prove that he was a very important monarch?
8. Why was Queen Elizabeth I remembered in the history of Britain?
9. What do you know about Queen Victoria's family life?

¹ by the Grace of God, of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland and of Her other Realms and Territories Queen, Head of the Commonwealth, Defender of the Faith, etc. etc. etc. — милостью Божией Королева Соединённого Королевства Великобритании и Северной Ирландии и её других владений и территорий, глава Содружества наций, защитница Веры и пр., и пр., и пр.

- What places in London are connected with Queen Victoria?
- Why do some people call Queen Victoria's reign the "golden age" in the history of Britain?
- What do you know about the British royal family of nowadays?

21 Prepare the marked paragraph for test reading (35, ex. 19).

LET US TALK

22 Speak about:

- royal palaces in London;
- royal parks in London;
- King Henry VIII;
- Queen Elizabeth I;
- Queen Victoria.

23 Look through the brief information about Queen Elizabeth II and speak about her.

Father: the Duke¹ [dju:k] of York, later King George VI.

Mother: Mary, the duchess² ['dʌtʃɪs] of York.

ELIZABETH:

Child

- Born in Windsor on 21 April 1926.
- Full name: Elizabeth-Mary-Alexander Windsor.
- Pet name: Lilibet.
- Educated at home, taught to read and write by her parents, studied Latin, Geography, Economics, Music.
- Knew foreign languages, spoke French well.
- Good at horse-riding, dancing, swimming; took part in swimming competitions.
- Lived in Windsor and Buckingham Palace with her parents.

¹ a duke — герцог

² a duchess — герцогиня

Young Lady

- Made her first speech on the radio in 1940 during the war.
- Wanted to help the army: grew vegetables and knitted¹ socks for soldiers.
- Learned to drive.
- Married Prince Philip in 1947.
- Prince Charles (first son) was born in 1948.

Young Queen

- Came to the throne in 1952.
- Was crowned in Westminster Abbey in London on 2 June 1953.
- Made her first Christmas speech to the nation in 1957 (now this speech is traditional).

Now

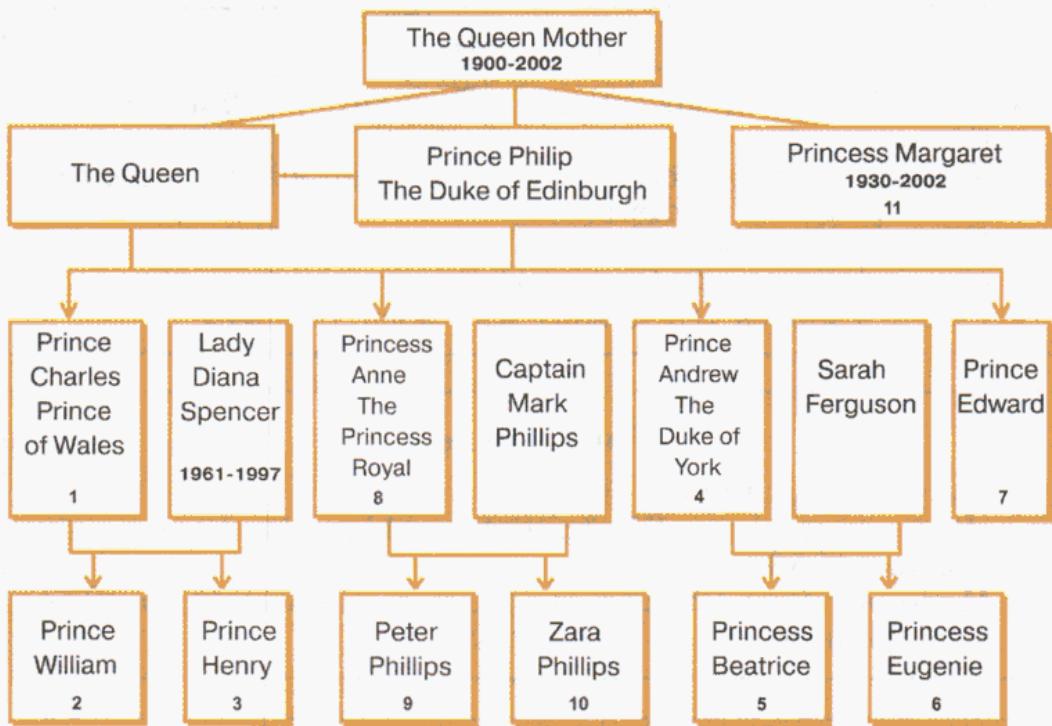
- Plays an important role in the country.
- Travels a lot.
- Has four children: Prince Charles, Princess Anne, Prince Andrew, Prince Edward.
- Likes reading, taking pictures, watching horse races.
- Has five official residences in Britain, Buckingham Palace in London and Windsor Castle near London among them.

24 a) Look at the family tree of the Windsors and say how the members of the family are related. (Numbers show order of succession to the Crown.²)

EXAMPLE: Zara Phillips is the Queen's granddaughter.

¹ to knit [nit] — вязать

² order of succession to the Crown — порядок наследования престола



1. Prince Henry is Lady Diana's ...
2. Princess Anne is the Queen Mother's ...
3. Princess Margaret is the Queen Mother's ...
4. The Queen is Princess Anne's ...

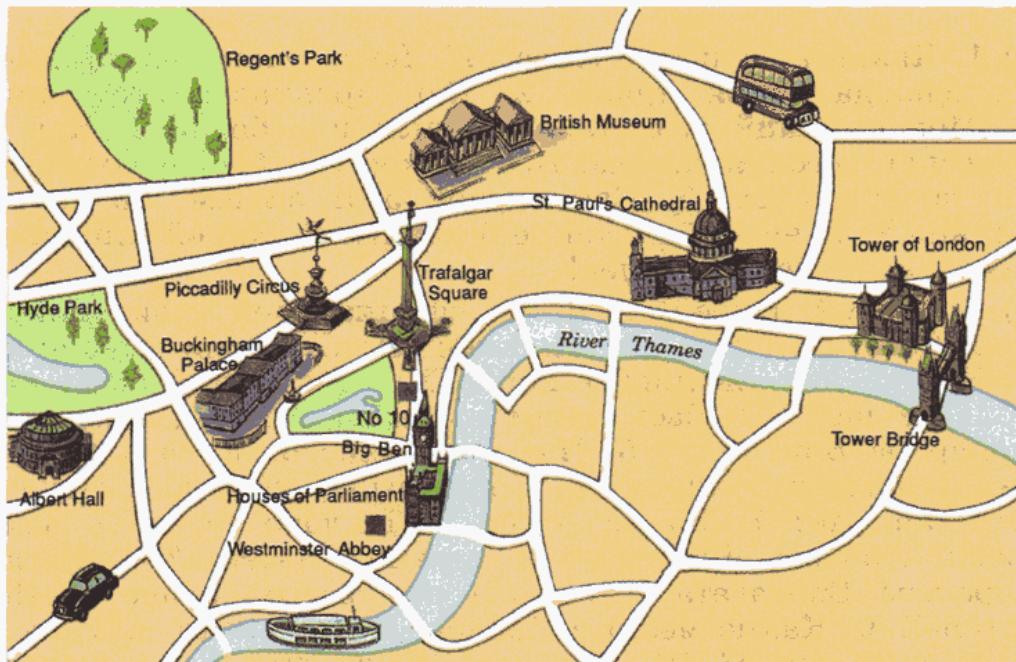
5. Prince William is Prince Philip's ...
6. The Queen is Princess Margaret's ...
7. Prince Henry is Princess Beatrice's ...
8. Prince Andrew is Prince Edward's ...

b) Ask your friends questions about the royal family, find out:

- how many members there are in the Windsor family;
- if all her children are married;
- who they are married to;
- how many grandchildren the Queen has got;
- who the Queen is married to;
- if the Queen has any brothers or sisters;
- who the Queen's eldest child is;

- who the youngest child is;
 - who Prince William and Prince Henry's parents are;
 - who can be the next monarch after Queen Elizabeth.
- c) Speak about the royal family today, use the questions of section b) as a plan.

25 Look at the map of London, find the places connected with the royal family, say where they are situated and what you know about them.



26 Look through ex. 23 and tell your friends about Queen Elizabeth's parents.

27 Choose a partner and make up a dialogue about presents you get and give. Mention:

- when you get/give presents;
- what you usually get/give;
- who gives you presents;
- where you buy presents;
- for whom you buy/to whom you give your presents;
- what presents you can make yourself;

- what was the best/the most unusual/the biggest/the nicest present you have ever got;
- what present you'd like to get for Christmas.

LET US WRITE

28 Do ex. 6, ex. 8, ex. 10, ex. 15, ex. 24 (b) in writing.

29 Express the same in English.

a) 1. Какая красивая процесия! Люди такие счастливые, их одежда такая яркая! 2. Как прекрасен этот мир! 3. Мой старший брат такой умный и добрый! 4. Какая чудесная сегодня погода! Небо такое голубое! А солнечко такое теплое! 5. Как скучен этот фильм, он такой длинный. Я не люблю такие фильмы. 6. Какой широкий проспект и как он зелен!

b) 1. Какой дворец является официальной резиденцией королевы? 2. Где расположен Лондонский зоопарк? 3. Кто правил Англией в конце XVI века? 4. Почему король Генрих VIII был одним из выдающихся (important) монархов Британии? 5. Чье правление было самым долгим в истории Англии? 6. Когда была побеждена Испанская армада? 7. Какой музей в Лондоне связан с именами королевы Виктории и принца Альберта? 8. Когда королева Елизавета II взошла на престол (come to the throne)? 9. Какие места в Лондоне напоминают нам о королевской семье? 10. Королева Елизавета II — праправнучка королевы Виктории, не так ли?

30 Write answers to the questions of ex. 29 (b).

31 Look at the words again and get ready to write a spelling quiz on them.



official, a ceremony, a residence, an avenue, a procession, public, a character, a monarch, politics, control, a throne, a tragedy, classical, an empire, to own, a crown/to crown, to reign/reign, to defeat/defeat, to remind, touching, a reason

LET US LISTEN AND DISCUSS

32 Listen to the tape, 36.

33 Put these sentences in the right order.

1. Paul was going to stay in the Royal Hotel.
2. Ian advised Paul to visit the British Museum and the Tower of London.
3. Paul admired the procession walking along the Mall.
4. Paul followed the taxi in his car.
5. Paul decided to visit London.
6. Paul stopped a taxi.
7. Paul couldn't find his hotel.

34 Imagine that you are Paul, a businessman from France. Tell your friend Ian about your visit to London.

UNIT 10 SHAKESPEARE'S LAND



LET US REVIEW

1 Listen to the tape, 37, and put down the right ending: -ty or -teen.

fif... reptiles

four... mammals

six... reasons

eigh... species

seven... pigeons

nine... habitats

thir... insects

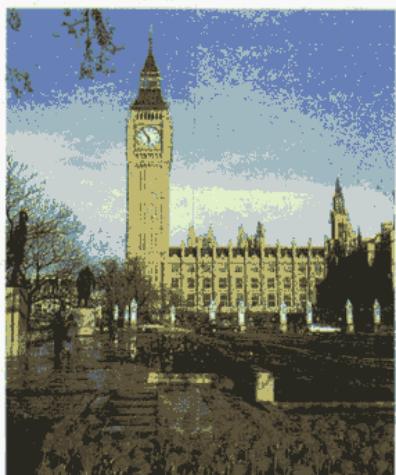
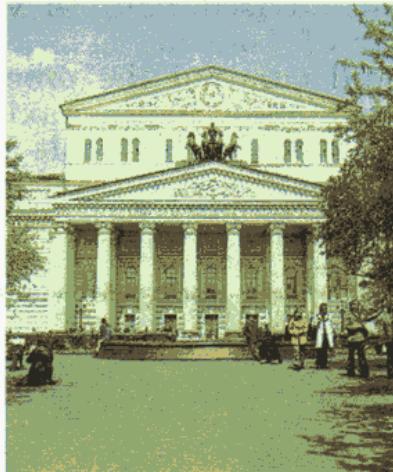
for... creatures

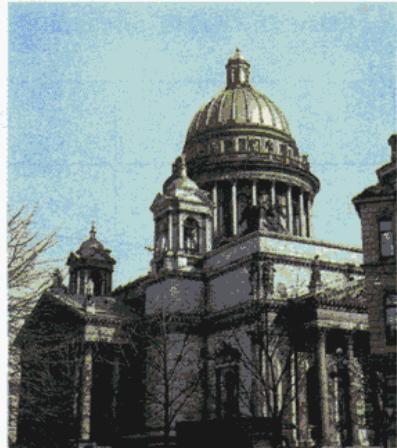
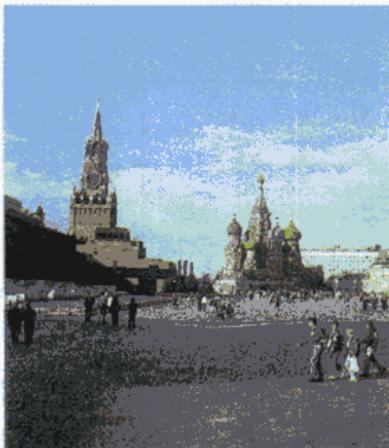
2 Look at the dates, read them and check yourselves with the help of the tape, 38.

1831; 1900; 1979; 1501; 1997; 1804; 1016; 1700; 1222;
1915; 2000.

3 Look at the pictures and say what places or what people they remind you of.

EXAMPLE: The Statue of Liberty reminds me of New York.





4 Match the definitions with the words they describe.

to win a victory in a war

making a feeling of pity

to get in contact with something or somebody

a king or a queen

a sign of royal power worn on the head

to be a king or a queen

the place where one lives

to bring to memory

to defeat
to touch
a crown
to remind
a monarch
a residence
touching
to reign

5 Use the table and speak about the four English monarchs.

<i>Name</i>	<i>Birth</i>	<i>Marriage</i>	<i>Death</i>
Henry VIII	Greenwich Palace ['grɪnɪdʒ 'pælɪs], 1491	1) Catherine of Aragon ['kæθərɪn əv 'ærəgən] 2) Anne Boleyn ['æn 'boɪn] 3) Jane Seymour ['dʒeɪn 'si:mɔ:] 4) Anne of Cleves ['æn əv 'kli:vz] 5) Catherine Howard ['kæθərɪn 'haʊəd] 6) Catherine Parr ['kæθərɪn 'pa:]	1547
Elizabeth I	Greenwich Palace, 1533	—	1603
Queen Victoria	London, 1819	Prince Albert ['prɪns 'ælbət]	1901
Queen Elizabeth II	Windsor, 1926	Prince Philip ['prɪns 'filip]	—

LET US READ AND LEARN

FOCUS

Subject¹

Mother
Nina
He
They
I
etc.

Complex Object

want(s)
would like
expect(s)
don't want
doesn't want
wouldn't like
don't expect
doesn't expect

me
him
her
you
us
them
John
Kitty
the children,
etc.

to do
sth

1. Я хочу, чтобы он вернулся в 5.
2. Мама не хочет, чтобы я стал актёром.
3. Анне хотелось бы, чтобы мы пошли в зоопарк.
4. Нам не хотелось бы, чтобы ты вернулся слишком поздно.
5. Я не ожидаю, что они ответят на этот трудный вопрос.
6. Мы предполагаем, что поезд прибудет вовремя.
7. Они предполагают, что Джон остановится в гостинице.

1. I want him to come back at 5.
2. Mother doesn't want me to become an actor.
3. Ann would like us to go to the zoo.
4. We wouldn't like you to return too late.
5. I don't expect them to answer this difficult question.
6. We expect the train to arrive on time.
7. They expect John to stay at a hotel.

¹ subject — подлежащее

6 Read the sentences in the tables, give their Russian equivalents and notice the difference.

I I Mother Mother My teacher	tell ask advises teaches tells	John him Mary her me	to do his room. to do it carefully. to wash up after meals. to wash up well. to be kind and friendly.
I I Mother Mother Our teacher	want would like wants wants expects	John him Mary her us	to do his room. to do it carefully. to wash up after meals. to wash up well. to be kind and friendly.

7 Make up sentences.

I	want don't want would like expect don't expect	mother father my friend him her them us you	to	play football with me. come home soon. phone me at five. take me to Britain. go to Scotland. wait for me after classes. go to the baker's. help me with Text 1.
---	--	--	----	--

8 Say using the phrases on the right:

- what parents usually want/don't want their children to do;
- what teachers usually expect/don't expect their pupils to do;
- what you would like/wouldn't like your friend(s) to do.

tell lies
come home on time
smoke cigarettes
be too noisy
help other people
be honest and brave
read a lot
keep the environment clean
go with me to the disco
eat more fruit

EXAMPLE: My parents don't want me to come home late.

9 Express the same in English.

1. Никто не хочет, чтобы он сделал всю эту работу один.
2. Я ожидаю, что ваши друзья помогут вам сделать (make) карту Британских островов.
3. Алисе хотелось бы, чтобы учителя были добрыми.
4. Красная Шапочка не ожидала, что Волк побежит к домику бабушки.
5. Мы хотели, чтобы вам было удобно.
6. Ей не хотелось бы, чтобы мы давали ей советы.
7. Я не ожидаю, что они вернутся рано: дорога дальняя (it's a long way).
8. Мои родители не хотят, чтобы я читал в постели.
9. Детям хотелось бы, чтобы он показал им новый фильм.
10. Я не хочу, чтобы она сделала (make) эту ошибку ещё раз.

10 a) Read and guess what the underlined words mean.

1. He makes gloves. He is a glove-maker ['glav,meɪkə].
2. Their company ['kʌmpəni] was not big. There were four of them. The Royal Shakespeare Company is well-known all over the world.
3. Young people from 13 to 19 years old are called teenagers ['ti:n,eɪdʒəz].
4. He has not done anything criminal ['krɪmɪnl]. He is not a criminal. Prison is a place for punishing criminals. He is the country's most wanted criminal.¹
5. Would you like a book of poetry ['pəʊetri] for your birthday?

b) Look these words up to make sure that you have guessed right.

11 Read the words, look them up and study the word combinations and sentences to know how to use them.

a **twin** [twin] (*n*): a twin sister, a twin brother. My brother and I look so alike that people often think we are twins. These twins are as like as two peas.² Have you met my twin brother?

¹ a most wanted criminal — преступник, которого полиция хочет арестовать в первую очередь

² a pea [pi:] — горошина

a deer [dɪə] (*n*): one deer, three deer, many deer. The deer is a grass-eating animal that can run very fast. People say that deer are gentle and kind animals. Do you know that there is a famous Disney film about a deer called *Bambi*?

to please [pli:z] (*v*): to please sb, as you please. This new picture pleases me. Stay here as long as you please.

pleased [pli:zd]: to be pleased with/about sth, to feel/look pleased. Are you pleased with your new car? I am pleased to see you, Ann. Do you know why John looks so pleased?

stupid ['stju:pɪd], more stupid, the most stupid (*adj*): a stupid person, a stupid idea, to be stupid, to look stupid, it is stupid of you. What a stupid question to ask! It was stupid of you to put that funny hat on!

a thief [θi:f] — **thieves** [θi:vz] (*n*): a car thief, jewel thieves.¹ A thief has taken my bike. I think I know the thief who has stolen Mrs Richard's bag.

to scream [skri:m] (*v*): to scream for help, to scream loudly. People usually scream when they are in pain or very frightened. She screamed when she saw a snake. "Get out of here!" I screamed.

wicked ['wɪkɪd] (*adj*): a wicked witch, a wicked stepmother, a wicked man, it is wicked of you. She played the part of the wicked witch in the school performance. It was wicked of Jane to tell my secret to the whole class.

wickedly (*adv*): She smiled at us wickedly but said nothing.

exact [ɪg'zækt] (*adj*): the exact time, the exact place, the exact route, at the exact moment, to be (more) exact. Can you tell me the exact time? He was looking for the exact word in his vocabulary. Let's meet at about five, at five fifteen, to be exact.

exactly (*adv*): Please tell me exactly what you saw. "So she lives in South Cornwall." — "Exactly." "I hear that tomorrow you are leaving for London," she said. "Not exactly. First we are going to Paris for a day or two," John answered.

¹ jewel thieves ['dʒu:əl 'θi:vz] — похитители бриллиантов

- to act** [ækt] (*v*): to act quickly/fast, to act slowly, to act correctly, to act your age, to act on the stage. We've talked enough, it's time to act! A trained dog can act as a guide to a blind¹ person. Stop crying like a baby, act your age.
- a law** [lɔ:] (*n*): to be against the law, to break the law, to make a law, the laws of nature. If you break the law you must expect to be punished. Parking here is against the law. The British Parliament makes laws for the country.
- a bank** [bæŋk] (*n*): the bank of the river, the left/right bank, a grassy bank, a high/low bank. The town is on high banks on both sides of the river. I got out of the boat onto the bank.
- to earn** [ɜ:n] (*v*): to earn money, to earn 400 dollars a week, to earn one's living. *To earn* means to get money for doing work. Working at school she earned 800 pounds a month. What do you do to earn your living?
- a top** [tɒp] (*n*): at the top of the page, on the top of the mountain, at the top of one's voice, at the top of the class. The mountain tops were hidden in mist. Her name is at the top of the page. He is always at the top of the class. He got angry and shouted at the top of his voice.
- for a while** [wail]: I can't answer your question now, let me think for a while.

12 Guess the meanings of these words and check yourselves. See the vocabulary at the end of the textbook.

glove-maker	lawmaker
shoemaker	clock-maker
dressmaker	troublemaker
coffee maker	holidaymaker

13 Complete the sentences. Use the words from ex. 10, ex. 11.

1. A boy or a girl between the ages of 13 and 19 is a
2. A big wild animal with long horns is called a

¹ blind [blaɪnd] — слепой

3. If someone acts or speaks foolishly (like a fool) we say that he or she is 4. Two people born to one mother at the same time are 5. A river is a big stream of water between two 6. A person who takes things belonging to other people (who steals) is a 7. If you cry at the top of your voice you 8. Poets write

14 Say how they earn their living.

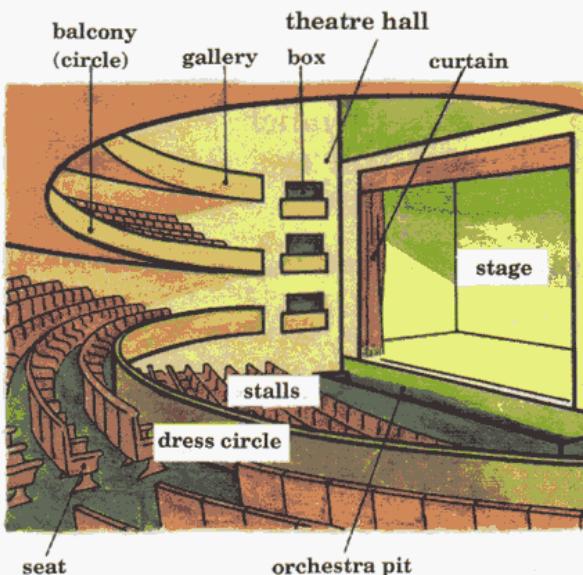
EXAMPLE: A pilot flies a plane. A dressmaker makes dresses.

1. A pilot _____.
2. _____ makes dresses.
3. A baker _____.
4. _____ writes for a newspaper.
5. _____ sells vegetables and fruit.
6. A doctor _____.
7. A teacher _____.
8. _____ writes novels, stories.
9. _____ plays in a theatre.
10. A glove-maker _____.
11. _____ makes shoes.
12. _____ plays professional football.

15 Say:

- 1) when your parents last looked pleased; 2) why teachers often ask their pupils "Act your age!"; 3) which of your friends comes to meet you at the exact time you expect him; 4) what people are called twins; 5) what questions you think are stupid; 6) what you usually do to please your mother; 7) what fairy tales about wicked witches you remember.

16 a) Look at the picture of a theatre hall. What are the Russian equivalents for the words in the picture?



b) Listen to the dialogue, **39**, read it artistically and then learn it by heart.

Alice:

Are there any seats for Saturday night?

*Box-office clerk:*¹

There isn't a performance on Saturday.

Alice:

Isn't there? Oh, sorry. My mistake. Then, I'd like to have two seats for Sunday.

Box-office clerk:

Would you like them in the stalls?²

Alice:

Haven't you got anything cheaper?

Box-office clerk:

Certainly. I've got some free seats in the dress circle³ and two seats in the gallery⁴ which are even cheaper.

Alice:

Are there any seats in the boxes?⁵

Box-office clerk: No, I'm afraid that's all there is.

¹ a box-office clerk ['bɒks ,ɒfɪs 'kla:k] — театральный кассир

² in the stalls [sto:lz] — в партере

³ in the dress circle [,dres 'sɜːkl] — в бельэтаже (первый ярус)

⁴ in the gallery ['gæləri] — на галёрке

⁵ in the boxes ['bɒksɪz] — в ложах

- Alice:* Fine. How much are the seats in the dress circle?
- Box-office clerk:* Would you like the third row? The seats there are £7.50 each.
- Alice:* OK, I'll take them. Here is £15. Thank you very much.
- Box-office clerk:* There you are. I hope you will enjoy the performance.

17 Think up your own dialogues replacing the underlined words.

LET US READ

18 Before you read the text think and say what you know about William Shakespeare. Do you know:



- when and where he lived?
- what he did to earn his living?
- if he had a family?
- why he became famous?
- what monarch reigned in the country in those times?
- when and where he died?

If you don't know all the answers, read the text and find them.

On April 23, 1564 a son, William, was born to John and Mary Shakespeare in Stratford-upon-Avon. His mother was the daughter of a farmer. His father was a glove-maker. William went to a grammar school in Stratford and had quite a good education. There he learned to love reading. While still a teenager, William married Anne Hathaway, a farmer's daughter some years older than himself. We don't know how he earned his living during these early years,

perhaps he helped his father in the family business. During these years his three children were born: Susannah [su:'zænə], the eldest, then twins — a son, Hamnet ['hæmnɪt] (not Hamlet ['hæmlɪt]), and another girl, Judith ['dʒu:dɪθ]. In 1587 Shakespeare went to work in London, leaving Anne and the children at home. We don't know exactly why he did it. Some people say that the reason was his love of poetry and theatre. But there is another story which says that he had to run away from law because he killed some deer belonging to a rich man.

In London Shakespeare began to act and to write plays and soon became an important member of a well-known acting company. Most of his plays were performed in the new Globe Theatre built on the bank of the River Thames. In 1613 he stopped writing and went to live in Stratford where he died in 1616.

Four hundred years later his plays are still acted — not only in England but in the whole world.

THE ACTORS COME TO TOWN

(from the book "William Shakespeare"
by Jennifer Basset)

The story is told by Will Shakespeare's friend, Toby ['təʊbi].

40. Will married Anne Hathaway in November and she came to live in Henley ['henlɪ] Street. John Shakespeare was pleased that his oldest son was married but I don't think Will's mother wanted him to marry so young: Will was only eighteen.

Susannah was born the next year. All babies look the same to me but Will was very pleased with her.

"Look, Toby, she's got my eyes," he said happily. "She's going to be as beautiful as the Queen of Egypt and as clever as King Solomon."

"Oh yes!" I said. "All parents talk like that about their children." I knew Will's wife Anne didn't like me. To her, I was one of Will's wild friends who got him into trouble. She came from a very serious, puritan¹ family. A lot of

¹ puritan ['pjʊərɪtən] — пуританский

church-going and no singing or dancing. But Will and I still went around together when we could.

Soon there was another baby on the way¹ and one evening in February 1585 I hurried round to Henley Street to hear the news. Will's sister, Joan, opened the door, and then Will came running down the stairs.

"It's two of them!" he said. "Twins! A girl and a boy. Isn't that wonderful?" Will called the twins Hamnet and Judith. John Shakespeare was very pleased to have his first grandson and everyone was happy. For a while.

Will was still reading and writing but he had changed. He was twenty-three now and he was not happy with his life.

"Stratford's too small, Toby," he said. "Too slow. Too quiet. Too boring. I've got to get away."

"Yes, but how?" I asked. "You've got a family — three young children, remember."

He didn't answer.

In the summer months companies of players often came to small towns and in 1587 five different companies came to Stratford. Will and I always went to see the plays. Will loved to talk to the actors and to listen to all their stories of London.

The Queen's Men came to Stratford in June and we went to see the play. I don't remember what it was. I know that I laughed a lot, and that Will said it was a stupid play with not a word of poetry in it.

"Why don't you write a play yourself?" I asked him.

"Write a play?" he laughed. "Anne will never speak to me again."

I didn't say anything and Will looked at me and laughed again.

It happened a few months later. I walked into the Shakespeares' kitchen one evening and there was Anne with a red, angry face, shouting at the top of her voice.

"How can you do this to me? And what about the children?" Then she saw me and stopped.

¹ soon there was another baby on the way — они ждали ещё одного ребёнка

Will was sitting at the table and looked pleased to see me. "I've told Anne," he said quietly, "that I'm going to live in London. I want to be an actor and to write plays if I can."

"Plays!" screamed Anne. "Acting! Actors are dirty, wicked people! They're all thieves and criminals! They drink all day and they never go to church..."

"Don't be stupid, Anne. You know that's not true. Listen. I'll come home when I can but I must go to London. I can't do anything in Stratford." He looked at me across the room. "Are you coming with me, Toby?"

"How soon shall we start?" I asked. ☺

19 Say if it is true or false.

1. Shakespeare was born in the 16th century.
2. Shakespeare's father was a clock-maker.
3. William was poorly educated, but loved reading.
4. William Shakespeare had twin daughters.
5. In 1587 Shakespeare went to work in London.
6. William Shakespeare wrote plays for the new Globe Theatre.
7. William Shakespeare never acted on the stage.
8. Shakespeare lived in Stratford the last three years of his life.
9. Shakespeare died writing his last play.
10. Plays by Shakespeare are acted only in Britain.

20 Get ready with test reading of Toby's story (ex. 18, ☺ 40).

21 Read the last part of the text (ex. 18) beginning with the words "The Queen's Men came to Stratford in June" in reported speech.

LET US TALK

22 Speak about Shakespeare's married life in Stratford before he left for London.

23 a) This is a list of some of Shakespeare's great plays. Guess which of them are tragedies and which are comedies. Find out what these plays are called in Russian.

1593 "The Comedy of Errors"¹

¹ an error ['erə] — ошибка

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1595 "Romeo and Juliet" | 1600 "Twelfth Night" |
| [rəʊmɪəʊ ən'dʒu:ljət] | 1601 "Hamlet" |
| 1596 "A Midsummer Night's Dream" | 1603 "All's Well That Ends Well" |
| 1597 "The Merchant ¹ of Venice" | 1604 "Othello" [əʊ'θeləʊ] |
| 1599 "Julius Caesar" | 1606 "King Lear" [ki:ə] |
| 1600 "As You Like It" | 1606 "Macbeth" [mæk'bɛθ] |

b) Have you heard about any of these plays or read them or seen them at the theatre? Tell your friends about them.

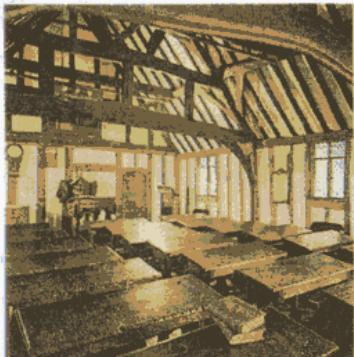
- 24 Shakespeare was born and spent a great part of his life in Stratford-upon-Avon. Look at the pictures of Stratford, use the information about the places you see in them and act as a guide. Let your friends be a group of tourists visiting Stratford. Work in small groups.

Mary Arden's house, three miles northwest of Stratford. Here lived Shakespeare's mother. This is a typical farm house of the period.



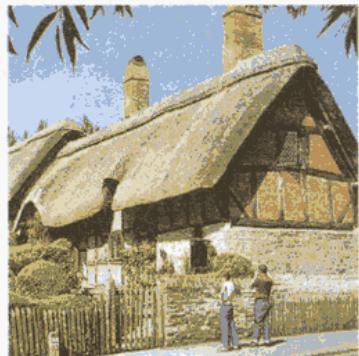
Shakespeare's birthplace in Henley Street. John Shakespeare lived and kept his shop in this house. His eight children were born here. Two of them died young.

¹ a merchant ['mɜ:tʃənt] — купец



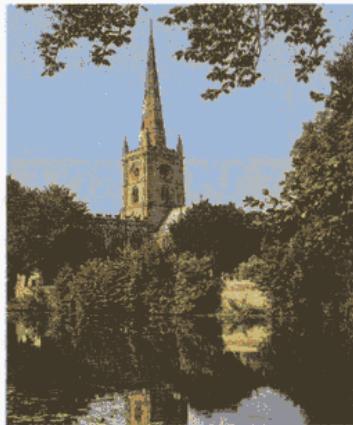
This is the schoolroom where Shakespeare was educated, as many people believe. It is still in use.

Anne Hathaway's cottage, a mile from Stratford, where she was born in 1556, and lived until she married William Shakespeare in 1582.



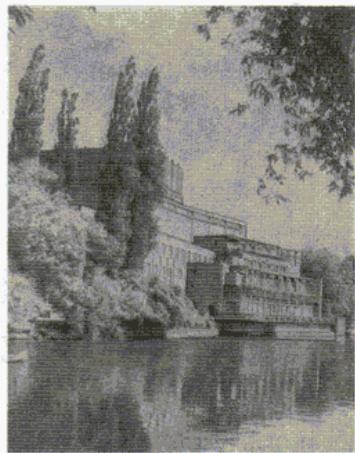
This is the place where the house in which Shakespeare died used to be. It was a big house bought by William Shakespeare for his family when he was still in London. Here he spent the last years of his life. Unfortunately, the house was destroyed.

This is the Holy Trinity Church¹ where Shakespeare was buried. Visitors coming to Stratford admire the beauty of the church and honour his memory. It's interesting that he died on his birthday, 23 April, 1616.



¹ the Holy Trinity Church [ðə 'hɔːli 'triniti 'tʃɜːtʃ] — церковь Святой Троицы

Another memorial to William Shakespeare is the Royal Shakespeare Theatre. The present building was constructed in 1932. The first building was opened on Shakespeare's birthday in 1879 and destroyed by fire in 1926.



The bronze statue of Shakespeare, presented to Stratford by Lord Ronald Sutherland Gower ['gaveɪ] in 1888. Shakespeare's figure is high above the ground and on the ground there are small figures of Shakespeare's famous characters.

LET US WRITE

25 Do ex. 7, ex. 8, ex. 9, ex. 13, ex. 14 in writing.

26 Use *to* where necessary.

1. — We're going ... read one of Shakespeare's plays in school. I think the teacher said "Hamlet" or "Omelette" — I'm not sure.

— She certainly wants you ... read "Hamlet".

2. Let us ... visit Stratford on 23 April, that's the day when Shakespeare was born.
3. — I expect you ... finish reading "Romeo and Juliet" by the end of January. — I don't think I will be able ... finish the play so early.
4. — Don't forget ... visit Anne Hathaway's cottage when you come to Stratford. — I would love ..., but I'm not sure we'll have time ... do it.
5. — I can't read Shakespeare in the original. — Nobody expects you ... do it. But you should ... read at least some of his plays in Modern English.

27 Look at the words again and get ready to write a spelling quiz on them.



a glove-maker, a company, a teenager, a criminal, poetry, a twin, a deer, to please, pleased, stupid, a thief/thieves, to scream, wicked, wickedly, exact, exactly, to act, a law, a bank, to earn, a top, for a while

LET US LISTEN AND DISCUSS

28 a) Make sure you know this word:

to wave [weɪv] — махать

b) Listen to the tape, **41**, and say "True", "False" or "Don't know".

1. Kevin lived in a small village on the bank of a river.
2. Kevin's uncle lived in the country.
3. Uncle Ronald's full name was Mr Ronald Smith.
4. Kevin could write beautiful poetry.
5. Uncle Ronald didn't know anybody in his village.
6. Uncle Ronald was a kind man and loved animals.
7. Uncle Ronald was friendly and waved to everybody they met during their drives.

29 Ask Kevin 5 questions about his stay in the country.

30 This is an outline of the story. Develop each of its items.

1. Kevin's life in the city and what he felt about it.
2. Kevin's stay with his uncle and the way he spent his time there.
3. Uncle Ronald's idea of how to make everybody happy.

UNIT 11 CONSOLIDATION TWO

LET US REVIEW

1 Say what you remember about:

- the Lake District
- Land's End
- Hadrian's Wall
- Oxford
- Brighton
- Heathrow Airport
- the County of Kent
- Oliver Cromwell
- Stratford-upon-Avon

2 Imagine that you are going to meet Prince William, Queen Elizabeth's grandson. Prepare 8–10 questions that you would like to ask him.

3 How well do you know London? Give names to the places in these pictures.

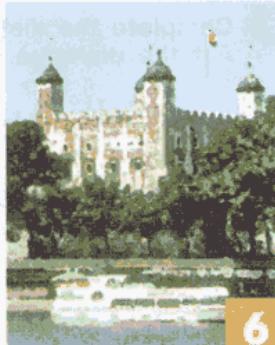




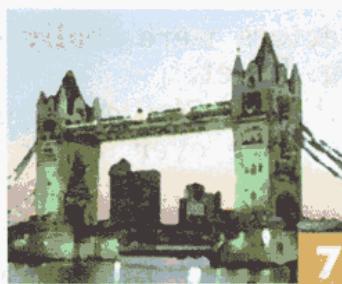
4



5



6



7

4 Say where in London you can:

- watch the changing of the Guard.
- see the Crown Jewels.
- feed the pigeons.
- see a very large clock at the top of a tower.
- listen to concerts of classical music.
- listen to a speaker talking to the public.
- do some shopping.
- see collections of English and European pictures.

5 Work in pairs. Read the questions and let your partner answer them. Don't forget to change over.

1. What famous politicians do you know?
2. What city is Alexander Pushkin's birthplace?
3. What do you think is the most famous university in Russia?
4. How can you prove that Russia is a country of lowlands and highlands?
5. What theatre in Moscow is built in the shape of a star?
6. What is St. Petersburg famous for?
7. What's the most touching film you have ever seen?

6 Complete the dialogue. Compare your version with the version on the tape.
Act the dialogue out, 42.

Ben: Well, Alice, did you enjoy the play?

Alice:

Ben: I think it was wonderful. I like Shakespeare's plays. I've always wanted to see "Romeo and Juliet" in Stratford.

Alice: ... ?

Ben: Oh, yes. The actors were really good, especially the actress playing Juliet.

Alice: How did you like the Shakespeare Memorial Theatre? It's the biggest I've ever seen.

Ben: Yes, it's huge. I'm glad our seats were

Alice: Now I understand why we have come to Stratford all the way from London. I enjoyed every minute of the play.

Ben: So ... I. Just wait, tomorrow we are going to visit the house in Henley Street.

Alice: ... ?

Ben: Don't you know? It's

Alice: Really? Did Shakespeare live all his life in the same house?

Ben: Not quite.

Alice: I didn't know that. Did Shakespeare have a large family?

Ben:

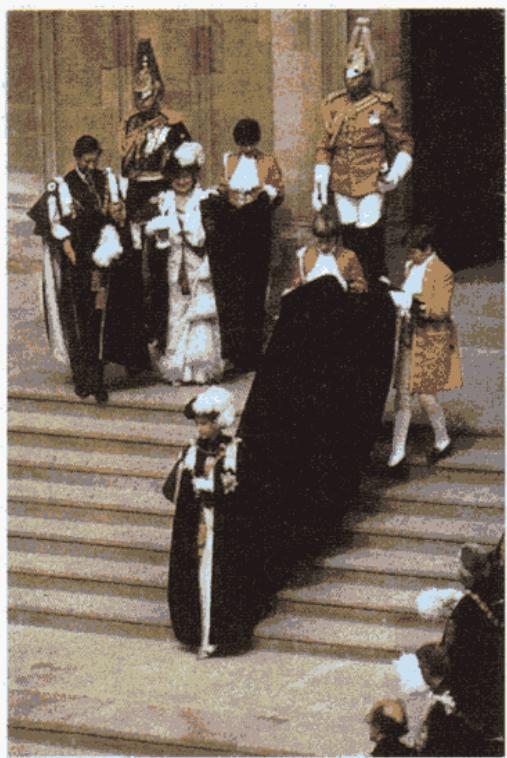
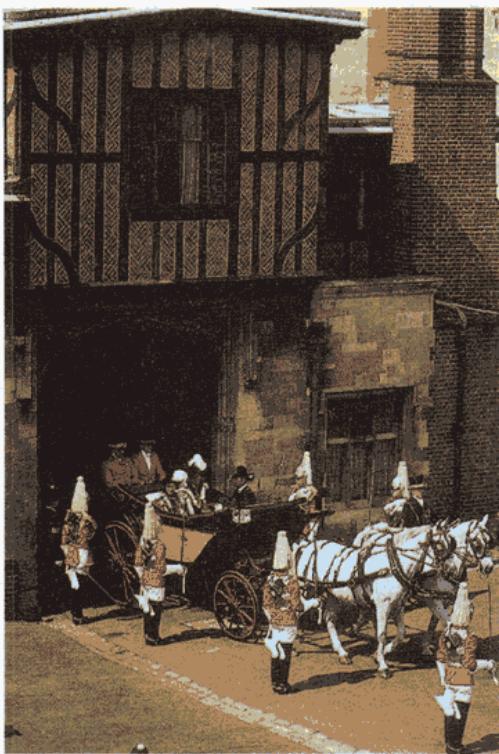
Alice: I'd like to know more about William Shakespeare and see all his plays in the theatre.

7 Describe the pictures using the words.

a)

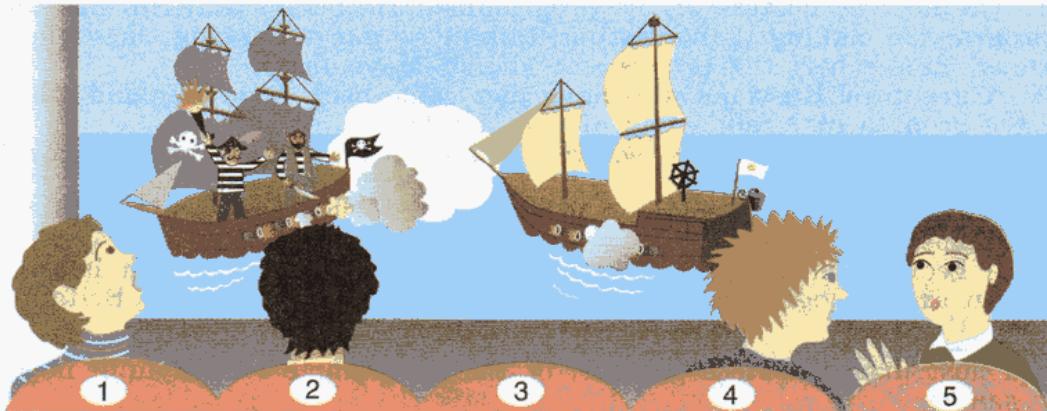
a ceremony an avenue a procession a royal coach¹
a monarch residence a crown at the exact time
a politician to rule the country

¹ a royal coach [r'ɔɪəl 'kəʊtʃ] — королевская карета



6)

teenagers ... to scream ... at the top of one's voice
for a while ... such an exciting film ... tragedy
... to hold up ...
the ship ... wicked pirates



c)

highlands holidaymakers a waterfall scenery
to admire a valley/meadow/plain to attract/
attractive exciting/to be excited



8 Role play the situation.

- a) You are taking part in a TV programme "My Discovery of England". Everyone is asked to speak about the place in England that he/she has discovered for himself/herself.

The list of characters:

1. The host or hostess of the programme.¹ He begins and finishes the programme making it interesting, talking to guests, asking them questions. Remember: the programme should move fast.
2. A group of Russians who have just come back from England (they have been to different parts of the country).
3. A journalist who has written a lot of articles about the royal family.
4. An actress who is going to play in a historical film about William Shakespeare.
5. A geographer who is working on a book about the British Isles.
6. An archaeologist interested in the problem of Romans in Britain.

¹ a host [həʊst]/hostess ['həʊstɪs] of the programme — ведущий передачи

b) Imagine you are taking part in a British TV programme "My Discovery of Russia". What places in Russia will you describe?

LET US READ

- 9 Read the text and say: a) what you think about the tradition described in it and b) if Russian people have such a tradition.

GREETINGS CARDS



To know a country we should know its traditions. Sending greetings cards is one of them. Greetings cards are very popular in Britain. The most common kinds of greetings cards are birthday cards, congratulations cards, sympathy cards,¹ get-well cards, and cards for special days.

Birthday cards. There are special family birthday cards for mothers, fathers, sisters, and brothers. There are cards which are special for friends, teachers, and other people. Children's cards often have a large number on them showing how old the children are. Cards for adults have pictures of flowers or scenery, or humorous cartoons.

¹ sympathy ['simprəθi] cards — открытки, предназначенные для выражения сочувствия или соболезнования

Congratulations cards. These greetings cards are used for such things as the birth of a baby, a wedding¹ or an anniversary.² You can even buy a congratulations card for a person who gets a new house or a new job!

Sympathy cards are sent when someone dies. You should send the card to the person you know best in the family. The sympathy card means "I'm sorry".

Get-well cards. If a friend is sick, at home or in hospital, you can send a get-well card. A get-well card means "I hope you will feel better soon".

Special occasion cards are sent to family and friends on some of the special days during the year; for example, on Christmas, Valentine's Day, Easter, Mother's Day, Father's Day, Halloween. On 14 February some children give valentines to each other in their classes in school. Teenagers and grown-ups sometimes send valentines to their girlfriends, boyfriends, husbands or wives.

10 Answer the questions to see if you understood the text well.

1. What are five different kinds of greetings cards?
2. What kind of cards do people buy most often?
3. Are there different kinds of birthday cards?
4. What are congratulations cards used for?
5. When do you send a sympathy card?
6. What does a get-well card mean?
7. Can you name some special occasion cards?
8. What kind of special occasion cards is most popular with young children?

LET US TALK

11 Say what kind of greetings card British people send when:

- 1) someone they know is getting married;
- 2) someone they know is in hospital;
- 3) it's February 14th;

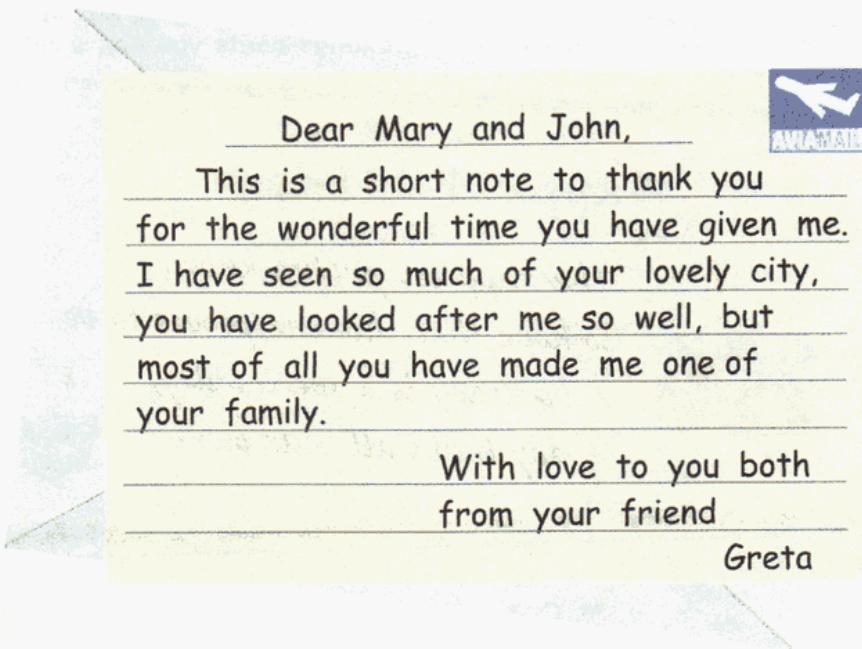
¹ a wedding ['wedɪŋ] — свадьба

² an anniversary [,æni'versəri] — юбилей, торжество

- 4) it's December 25th;
- 5) someone they know has flu and has to stay in bed for a week;
- 6) some people they know have been married for 20 years today;
- 7) someone they know has a baby;
- 8) someone they know has died;
- 9) someone they know is 13 years old today;
- 10) someone they know has got a new flat.



a) Read the text on the postcard and say who wrote the postcard, to whom and why.



b) Say if you think it is a good idea to send such cards to people to thank them for their kindness, help and hospitality.¹ Why?



Speak about the tradition of sending postcards in Russia. Say:

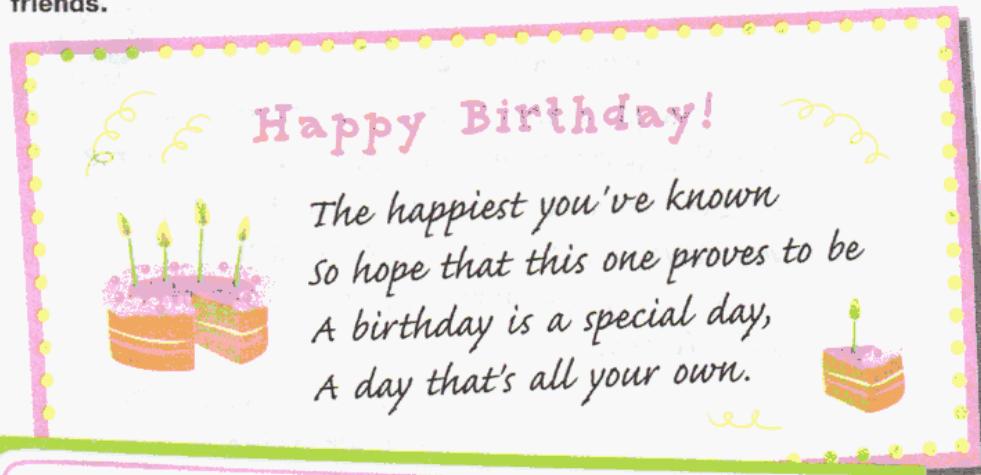
- when Russian people send postcards;
- to whom they send such cards;

¹ hospitality [,hɒspɪ'tælətɪ] — гостеприимство

- what traditional cards are like;
- if the greetings cards have changed;
- where you can buy such cards;
- if they send cards to people who are ill;
- if you like to send or to get greetings cards;
- if you always buy cards or make them yourself.

LET US WRITE

- 14 Postcards are usually short. Write a postcard to your friend about the place that impressed you most in England.
- 15 Here are some greetings cards for you to write. The lines on them are all mixed up. Rewrite the lines to have greetings cards you can send to your friends.



Goodbye and Happiness Always

The best of good wishes go with you, too.
But wherever you go —
Sorry to hear that you are leaving,
Whatever you do.

- 16** Write: a) what you would like
1) your mother to do (not less than 3 sentences); 2) your father to do (not less than 3 sentences); 3) your granny to do (not less than 3 sentences);
b) what you think your mother (father, granny) doesn't want you to do. (Not less than 6 sentences.)

EXAMPLE: I would like my mother to take me to McDonald's one day.
I think my mother doesn't like me to shout loudly.

LET US LISTEN AND DISCUSS

- 17** a) Make sure you know these words:

to prefer [pri'fɜ:] (preferred, preferred) — предпочитать,
nearby ['nɪəbɪ] — поблизости

- b) Listen to the tape, 43, and answer these questions.

1. Why did Jim become a thief? 2. What people worked for him? 3. Why did Jim have to explain to them exactly what they should do? 4. What information did Jim get one day? 5. Why did Jim send one of his people to the house? 6. What did he see through the window? 7. Why did he tell Jim that the family they were going to rob was the wrong family?

- 18** Tell the story of "The Wrong Family" to your friends who haven't heard it.



LET US REVIEW

- 1 Answer these questions, then listen to the tape to check your answers,
44.

- When is Christmas celebrated in Europe?
- Do Russians celebrate this holiday? When do they celebrate it?
- Whose birthday is celebrated at Christmas?
- What country gave us the tradition of decorating the Christmas tree?
- Who introduced the tradition to decorate the Christmas tree in Russia?
- When was the custom of decorating Christmas trees with candles and presents introduced into Britain?
- Where does the most famous Christmas tree stand in London? Whose present is it?
- What do they call Father Frost in the West? Where does he live?
- What does Santa Claus look like?
- How does Santa Claus travel?
- How does Santa Claus enter houses to give children Christmas presents and where does he put them?
- What are the traditional Christmas colours?
- Why do little children sometimes write letters to Santa Claus?
- When did the custom of sending Christmas cards to friends, colleagues and relatives appear?
- What is the traditional Christmas food?
- What are Christmas carols?
- What is the day after Christmas called?
- How do people decorate their houses at Christmas?

- 2 Listen to the traditional Christmas song “Jingle, Bells!”,¹ 45, then sing it.

JINGLE, BELLS!



Chorus:

Jingle, bells! Jingle, bells!
Jingle all the way!
Oh what fun it is to ride
In a one-horse open sleigh.²

I

Dashing through the snow
In a one-horse open sleigh,
O'er the fields we go,
Laughing all the way.

II

Bells, on bobtail³ ring,
Making spirits bright.⁴
What fun it is to ride and sing
A sleighing song tonight.

Chorus.

¹ “Jingle, Bells!” — «Звените, бубенчики!»

² a one-horse open sleigh [slei] — открытые, запряженные одной лошадью сани

³ a bobtail ['bɒbtel] — лошадка с коротким, подстриженным хвостом

⁴ making spirits bright — поднимая настроение

LET US READ

- 3 Follow your teacher reading the text (Part I and then Part II) and say why Mr Scrooge changed.

A CHRISTMAS CAROL

(after Ch. Dickens)

Have you ever heard about Christmas carols?¹ They are religious songs sung at Christmas. At Christmas time groups of people sing carols, both indoors and outdoors. They usually collect money for homeless and poor people. Sometimes carol singers, especially children, go along the streets from house to house, singing in front of each house and asking for money. But there is a Christmas carol which is not a song or a hymn [himn], it is a story told more than a century and a half ago by one of the most wonderful storytellers in the world — Charles Dickens, the famous English writer.



Part I

Once upon a time old Ebenezer Scrooge ['ebi'nizə 'skru:dʒ] was busy in his office. It was Chrismas Eve. The weather was cold and foggy.

¹ a carol ['kærəl] — рождественская песнь, гимн

The door of Scrooge's office was opened so that he could keep an eye on his clerk,¹ Cratchit ['krætʃɪt], who was writing letters. Scrooge paid him less than a pound a week. That was not half enough for Cratchit's large family. Scrooge did not like to spend his money, that is why the fire in his office was very small and Bob Cratchit's hands were so cold that he could hardly write.



Suddenly, a young and cheerful² voice cried, "Merry Christmas, uncle! God save you!" It was Scrooge's nephew.

"Humbug!"³ said Scrooge, using his favourite word. "Merry Christmas! You have no right to be merry.⁴ You are poor." Scrooge was telling the truth: his nephew was poor but he was a happy man because he was married to a woman whom he loved. Scrooge could not understand that. He thought that love was even sillier than a Merry Christmas. Scrooge's nephew wanted to invite his uncle to have Christmas dinner with him and his young wife but Scrooge did not want to hear about it and the young man left wishing his uncle and Cratchit a Merry Christmas again.

Five minutes later Scrooge had two more visitors with papers in their hands. They were collecting money for poor people and told Scrooge that thousands of people were in need of the simplest things, even food and clothes. This time Scrooge got really angry and refused to give money for charity.⁵ He said that the place for poor people was in prison or the work house.

Seeing that it was useless to say anything more, the two men left.

It grew colder and colder outside. The fog and darkness thickened so that the ancient church tower was hardly seen. A boy sang a Christmas carol outside the front door of Scrooge's office.

¹ clerk [kla:k] — служащий

² cheerful ['ʃiəfl] — радостный

³ humbug ['hʌmbʌg] — чушь

⁴ merry ['meri] — весёлый

⁵ for charity ['tʃærɪti] — на благотворительные цели

Scrooge got even angrier. He picked up a big ruler and opened the door so quickly that the frightened small singer ran away as fast as he could.

Part II

At last it was time to shut up the office. The next day was the twenty-fifth of December and the office had to be closed for Christmas Day. As soon as Scrooge walked out, Bob Cratchit closed the office and ran home. He didn't put on a coat as he didn't have one. He ran home to play Christmas games with his children.

Scrooge took his melancholy¹ dinner in his melancholy tavern ['tævən]; read several new papers and went home to bed. His house was old and dark for nobody lived in it but Scrooge.

He was sitting alone before his small fire when he heard his doorbell ring. Then the heavy door of Scrooge's room opened and Scrooge saw ... a ghost. Scrooge recognised him at once: it was the ghost of Marley ['mæ:li], his partner, who had died several years before. Marley's Ghost was wearing a long and heavy chain². Scrooge became very frightened. "Why do you trouble me?" he asked the ghost. Marley's Ghost explained that he had been very selfish when he was alive³. He had been interested only in money and had not cared about people outside his office. Now he had no rest and no peace.

"I wear the chain I made in life link by link⁴. Do you know, Ebenezer Scrooge, the weight and length of the chain you wear yourself? I am here tonight to tell you that you still have a chance and hope not to go my way. Tonight you will see Three Spirits.⁵ The first will come tomorrow at one in the morning." With these words the Ghost walked to the window and disappeared into the dark night. And Scrooge went straight to bed, without undressing, and fell asleep at once.

¹ melancholy ['melənkləli] — грустный, унылый

² a chain [tʃeɪn] — цепь

³ alive — живой

⁴ link by link — звено за звеном

⁵ a spirit — дух

On the next day Ebenezer Scrooge had three visitors — the Ghost of Christmas Past, the Ghost of Christmas Present and the Ghost of Christmas Yet to Come. With the first Ghost Scrooge travelled to the past and remembered how lonely and unhappy he was once long ago when he was a schoolboy. He remembered his kind sister who brought him home from school on Christmas Eve many years ago and they were together and had the merriest time in the world. His sister had a large and kind heart but she was not very strong and died soon after she had a child — Scrooge's nephew.

The Ghost of Christmas Present changed Scrooge's home completely. He hung the walls with evergreens¹: holly, mistletoe,² and ivy.³ He made a bright fire in the fireplase, filled the room with turkeys, geese, meat, pies, puddings, cakes and fruit. Then the Ghost took Scrooge to Bob Cratchit's poor house. Bob, his wife and their six children were at home. They could not see Scrooge but he could see and hear everything. The smallest boy called Tiny Tim was a very weak child and it was clear that he would not live long.

Mrs Cratchit cut up the goose and then brought the pudding in. There was not enough food for such a large family but nobody noticed that. Everybody said to Mrs Cratchit how much they loved the goose and the pudding.

“A Merry Christmas to us all, my dears,”

Bob Cratchit said. “God bless us!”⁴

“A Merry Christmas!” said Tiny Tim.

“God bless us, everyone,” said everyone.

Suddenly Scrooge heard his own name.

“Let's drink to Mr Scrooge who gave us this dinner,” Bob Cratchit said. “Long life to him! A Merry Christmas and a Happy New Year!”

They were not a rich family; they were not well-dressed; their shoes were cheap. But they were happy, grateful and pleased with one another.



¹ an evergreen — вечнозелёное растение

² mistletoe ['misləʊ] — омела

³ ivy ['aɪvɪ] — плющ

⁴ God bless us! — Да храни нас Господь!

The Ghost showed Scrooge his nephew's home too. There Scrooge's nephew was talking to his wife. They were talking about him.

"He is a funny old man," said his nephew, "and he isn't very pleasant either. His money is of no use to him. He can't do any good with it. I can't be angry with him. I am sorry for him. I'd like to drink to his health. A Merry Christmas and a Happy New Year to the Old Man!"

The Ghost disappeared and Scrooge saw the Ghost of Christmas Yet to Come, the Ghost of the Future. This Ghost was very silent, he just took Scrooge to the centre of London, not far from his office. The Spirit showed him a group of businessmen, and Scrooge came up to them to listen to their talk. They were also talking about him. The Ghost showed him a grave with his name, Ebenezer Scrooge, on it. There were no flowers there. Nobody came to remember him. "No, Spirit! Oh, no, no!" he cried upon his knees. "I am not the man I was. Good Spirit, I'll start a new life! I will keep Christmas in my heart all the year. I will live in the Past, the Present and the Future. I will always remember this lesson!"

Suddenly the Ghost disappeared and Scrooge was in his room again. Scrooge felt very happy: the time before him was his own. "A Merry Christmas to everybody! A Happy New Year to all the world!" said Scrooge.

Ebenezer Scrooge kept his word: the very first thing he did was to send a huge turkey to Bob Cratchit's house. Then he put on his best clothes and got out into the street. He smiled at everyone he met. He met the gentleman who had walked into his office the day before, asking for money for the poor.¹ Scrooge gave him a lot of money. "My dear sir," said the gentleman, shaking hands with him, "I don't know what to say to such kindness."

In the afternoon Scrooge went to his nephew's house. And that was wonderful. He felt at home in 5 minutes. Everybody was as happy as could be.

¹ the poor — бедняки

Epilogue

Scrooge did it all, and much more. And to Tiny Tim, who did not die, he was a second father. He became as good a friend, as good a master, as good a man, as the good old city knew.

Ghosts did not visit him anymore, and people said that he knew how to keep Christmas better than anybody else. And so, as Tiny Tim said, God bless us, everyone!



4 Put the sentences in the right order.

Part I

1. Marley's Ghost was wearing a long and heavy chain.
2. Suddenly, a young and cheerful voice cried, "Merry Christmas, uncle!"
3. As soon as Scrooge walked out, Bob Cratchit closed the office and ran home.
4. "I wear the chain I made in life link by link."
5. Scrooge went straight to bed, and fell asleep at once.
6. He was sitting alone before his small fire when he heard his doorbell ring.
7. It was Christmas Eve.

Part II

1. Then the Ghost took Scrooge to Bob Cratchit's poor house.
2. On the next day Scrooge had three visitors.
3. The Ghost showed Scrooge his nephew's home too.
4. Scrooge gave him a lot of money.
5. "I will always remember this lesson."
6. Suddenly the Ghost disappeared and Scrooge was in his room again.
7. With the first Ghost Scrooge travelled to the past.

5 Say "True," "False" or "Don't know".

1. At the beginning of the story Ebenezer Scrooge was a nice and kind man, always ready to help people.
2. Scrooge had a wife and six children.
3. It all happened on Christmas Eve.
4. Bob Cratchit got three pounds a week.
5. The small singer came to the door of Scrooge's office to ask for some money.
6. Scrooge learned his lesson and changed com-

pletely. 7. Scrooge gave Bob's family a Christmas tree as a present. 8. Scrooge's nephew was not at home when Scrooge came to visit him. 9. The story has a happy end.

LET US TALK

6. Describe these places adding as many details as you would like.

1. London at Christmas (in the times of Charles Dickens).
2. Mr Scrooge's office.
3. Mr Scrooge's house before the Ghost of Present visited it.
4. Mr Scrooge's house during his visit.
5. Bob Cratchit's house.

7. Imagine the three ghosts and describe them.

LET US WRITE

8. Draw a picture of one of the ghosts (one you like/dislike most) and write 5–10 sentences about it.

9. Write a short story about Tiny Tim.

UNIT 13 SCOTLAND



LET US REVIEW

1. Give it a name. The word box can help you.

a deer, to please, stupid, to earn, a top, a thief, to act, to scream, a glove-maker, twins, a teenager, a bank

1. The highest point or part of something.
2. Two children born of the same mother at the same time.

3. A grass-eating animal that can run very fast.
4. To make somebody happy.
5. Silly or foolish.
6. The raised ground along the river.
7. A person who steals.
8. To cry out loudly.
9. To do something, to take action.
10. A person who makes gloves.
11. To receive money in return for work you do.
12. A young person of between 13 and 19 years old.

2 Say which of them can be:

a deer	wicked, strong, stupid, bad, young, famous
a thief	well-known, terrible, old, big, high, calm
a bank	touching, classical, attractive, exciting
poetry	international, fast, slow, fat, ugly

EXAMPLE: a wicked thief, a strong deer, etc.

3 Make up short stories using the words:

- 1) a thief, a criminal, to scream, wicked, at the top of one's voice, stupid;
- 2) a company, poetry, exact (exactly), to act, to earn, a teenager, as you please, for a while;
- 3) the top of the hill, a bank of the river, exactly, a glove-maker, a twin;
- 4) a deer, pleased, for a while, to scream at the top of one's voice, to earn the girl's love.¹

4 Remember the forms of these verbs in *past simple* and say what your friend did for a while yesterday.

EXAMPLE: Peter woke up, lay in bed for a while and then got up.

To lie in bed, to draw pictures, to look for pens and pencils, to build up a toy castle, to keep silent, to learn a poem by heart, to make supper, to ride a bike, to write

¹ to earn the girl's love — завоевать любовь девушки

poetry, to read a novel, to stand on one's head, to speak on the phone, to swim in the lake.



5

Nick has a large family. His father is a *builder*, his mother is a *cook*, his uncle is a *bus driver*, his aunt is a *dressmaker*, his granny is a *shop assistant* at the baker's, his granddad is a *journalist*. Nick's elder sister is a *ballet dancer*. Nick himself is an *actor*. Say how they all earn their living.

EXAMPLE:

Nick earns his living by acting in a theatre.

6

Open the brackets and make the dialogue complete.

AN INTERVIEW WITH THE HEADMASTER

Interviewer: Excuse me, may we (*ask*) you a few questions?

Headmaster: All right. Go ahead.¹

Interviewer: Can you (*speak*) English?

Headmaster: I'm afraid my English is not very good but I'd like all the pupils of the school (*speak*) good English.

Interviewer: What were your favourite subjects and what subjects did you not (*like*) at school?

Headmaster: Do you expect me (*name*) all the subjects?

Interviewer: Oh, no. We would like you (*mention*) only a few.

Headmaster: I liked French, literature and economics. I didn't like maths and physics.

Interviewer: What did you want (*be*) when you were a boy and what did your parents want you (*become*)?

Headmaster: I wanted (*become*) a teacher. And so did my parents as both of them were teachers.

7 Look through the "Interview with the Headmaster" (ex. 6). Imagine you have read it in your school newspaper. Tell your friends who haven't read the newspaper about the interview.

¹ Go ahead. — зð. Ну что же, давайте. (разг.)

8 Work in pairs. Make up your own interview with a school headmaster and find out:

- what he/she would like his/her students to know and/or to do;
- where he/she would like them to travel;
- why he/she would like them to visit these places;
- what he/she wouldn't like them to do;
- what book he/she expects his/her students to read;
- what languages he/she expects them to learn;
- what kind of people he/she wants his/her students to become.

9 Express the same in English.

1. Тереза хочет, чтобы близнецы помогли ей по дому.
2. Учитель не ожидал, что его ученики так полюбят поэзию.
3. «Я не хочу, чтобы ты кричал изо всех сил», — сказала мама сыну.
4. Мы бы хотели, чтобы вы немногого (некоторое время) погуляли на берегу реки.
5. Никто не ожидает, чтобы подростки зарабатывали себе на жизнь.
6. Мне бы не хотелось, чтобы ты читал криминальные рассказы.
7. Родители У. Шекспира хотели, чтобы он стал перчаточником?
8. Ты действительно ожидаешь, что в нашем лесу скоро будет много оленей?
9. Я не хочу, чтобы ты дружил с этим противным мальчишкой.
10. Я ожидаю, что ты будешь поступать по своему усмотрению (as you please).
11. Мы не ожидали, что она пригласит столько гостей на свой день рождения.

LET US READ AND LEARN

FOCUS

to make sb + Adj (happy, sad, etc.)

“I'll make you happy,” he said.

The teacher's voice made the boy pleased.

Fresh air and a lot of exercise made the child healthy.

The long walk made the old man tired.

10 Make up sentences.

The snow
The present
Tommy
The new toy
The old film

makes
made
will make

the garden
little Ann
his sister
me
him
her
them

beautiful.
happy.
angry.
sad.
white.
pleased.
unhappy.

FOCUS

to let/make somebody ~~to~~ do something

Jack always lets me help him.
Mother never makes us wash up, we do it ourselves.
Who will make her come on time?
I will let you come back late tonight.
Daddy, let them join us!
The news made everybody feel sad.

BUT!

to be allowed/made to do something

The pupils were made to learn the poem by heart.
The children were allowed to watch the football match on television.
I am never allowed to come home late.
Robert was made to wash the floor again.

11 Complete the sentences. Use *to let*, *to make*, *to be allowed*, *to be made*.

1. Your brother's trousers look terrible. You should ... him clean them.
2. I didn't want to do the room. My father ... me help him.
3. I can't come. My parents won't ... me.
4. Why do you always ... your children do whatever they like?

5. We ... to write Exercise Five in class.
6. The children ... to take part in the show.

FOCUS

to

I want you **to** go there.
We expect them **to** arrive at five.
Tom would like me **to** visit Scotland.
We were allowed **to** play outside.
The girl was made **to** tell the truth.

I'll make you **go** there.
We made them **arrive** at five.
My parents will let me **visit** Scotland.
They let us **play** outside.
The girl's friends made her **tell** the truth.

12 Insert **to** where necessary.

1. Let me ... join you.
2. He is always allowed ... do as he pleases.
3. We expected the tourists ... move fast for a while.
4. The sea voyage made the boy ... feel pleased.
5. I wouldn't like her ... scream so loudly.
6. She never expected John ... look stupid.
7. What exactly was Tim made ... repeat?

13 Express the same in English.

1. Нам разрешили посетить королевский дворец.
2. Тома Кенти (Kenty) заставили управлять Англией, хотя он не был королём.
3. «Я заставлю тебя помнить это!» — закричала женщина.
4. Мы хотим, чтобы вы сделали именно то, о чём мы вас просим.
5. Я не ожидала, что он знает поэзию так хорошо.
6. Детям хотелось, чтобы родители прочитали им книгу о пиратах.
7. «Я заставлю тебя рассказать мне правду!» — закричала Нелли изо всех сил.

14

a) Read and guess what the underlined words mean.

1. The boy was looking through the window and couldn't concentrate ['kɒnsəntreɪt] on the work.
2. There is a great contrast ['kɒntrɑ:st] between life in the county and life in the city.
3. On May, 9 there is usually a military ['militəri] parade in Moscow.

You already know the adjective *busy* and you can easily understand such a sentence: "I'm very busy tonight, I have a lot of things to do". But what does *busy* mean in these word combinations:

4. a busy street/square (*there is a lot of traffic there*);
a busy town (*full of work and activity*)?

b) Look these words up to make sure that you have guessed right.

15

Read the words, look them up and study the word combinations and sentences to know how to use them.

trade [treɪd] (*n, uncount.*): international trade, foreign trade, a centre of trade, a trade centre, the development of trade with Europe. Trade is the process of buying, selling or exchanging goods between countries.

- a **grave** [greɪv] (*n*): the writer's grave. Amy wants to see Shakespeare's grave.
- a **rock** [rɒk] (*n*): a high rock, to look at the rock, to take pictures of the rock. Do you see that rock over there? Holmes looked at the rocks below.

devotion [dɪ'veʊʃn] (*n*): devotion to the family, devotion to one's friends, devotion to one's parents. You can easily see their devotion to their children.

to bury ['berɪ], buried, buried (*v*): to be buried. He was buried in the church yard. To bury is to put a dead body into a grave. Where is your granny buried?

to hang [hæŋ], hung, hung (*v*): to hang curtains, to hang a picture. Hang your coat on the hook.¹

¹ a hook [huk] — крючок

prosperous ['prɒspərəs] (*adj*): a prosperous farmer (lawyer), a prosperous family, a prosperous city. A person who is prosperous is wealthy and successful.

picturesque [,piktʃə'resk] (*adj*): picturesque scenery, a picturesque valley, a picturesque village. The Lake District is one of the most picturesque places in the North of England, isn't it?

modest ['mɒdɪst] (*adj*): a modest house, a modest flat, a modest person, a modest dress. The young actress is very modest about her success. My uncle has got a lot of medals but he is too modest to wear them.

smart [smɑ:t] (*adj*): 1) (*Br. English* "pleasant to look at") a smart dress, a smart blouse, to look smart, to wear smart clothes. You look so smart in that new shirt. When did they buy their smart new car?

2) (*especially Am. English* "clever, quick") a smart boy, a smart servant, a smart answer, a smart child. If he is as smart as he says, why have they caught him?

to strike [straɪk], struck, struck (*v*): 1) to strike (on) the table, to strike somebody, to strike one's enemy, to strike a blow.¹ Who struck the first blow? George struck his enemy in the face.

2) (*about a clock*) to strike ten. It has just struck twelve. Listen! Is the clock striking? His hour has struck.

3) to be struck, to strike sb as clever (unusual, important). When Linda came to Edinburgh, she was immediately struck by romantic beauty of the city. How does it strike you?

striking ['straɪkɪŋ] (*adj*): That was a striking thing to happen! The most striking character in "Alice in Wonderland" is the Queen.

to be lined with something: a street lined with trees, a road lined with modern houses.

16 Complete these sentences with *so ... that*. Choose an adjective from the box.

EXAMPLE: Peter is ... he can't stand on his feet. (tired)
Peter is so tired that he can't stand on his feet.

¹ to strike a blow [bləʊ] — нанести удар

striking, modest, picturesque, prosperous, smart, busy, high

1. Alice's dress was ... we all admired it.
2. The contrast between the two brothers was ... we couldn't believe it.
3. The traffic in High Street is ... I never let my son cross it alone.
4. You don't know her: she is ... she'll never speak about her success.
5. The rock was ... we couldn't climb it.
6. The scene in front of us was ... we stood for a few moments admiring it and then took a few pictures.
7. The city of Venice was ... many people came to trade there.

17 Write the degrees of comparison of these adjectives.

EXAMPLE: smart — smarter — (the) smartest;
prosperous — more prosperous — (the) most prosperous.

Busy, prosperous, picturesque, modest, smart, striking,
fragile, exciting, attractive, touching, stupid, wicked.

18 Say:

- 1) where William Shakespeare was buried;
- 2) what streets are usually lined with;
- 3) which country is more prosperous — the USA or Greece;
- 4) when you prefer to wear your smartest clothes;
- 5) what city in Russia you can call especially picturesque;
- 6) how often the Kremlin clock strikes.

19 Add as many words as you can to each line.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Devotion to
<i>your mother...</i> | 4. Smart
<i>answer...</i> |
| 2. Prosperous
<i>country...</i> | 5. Striking
<i>idea...</i> |
| 3. Picturesque
<i>valley...</i> | 6. Street lined with
<i>houses...</i> |

20 Express the same in English.

1. Мало людей знают, где находится могила Пушкина.
2. Пушкин был похоронен в Святогорском монастыре (Svyatogorsky Monastery ['svyətəgɔrski])�. 3. Какая поразительная женщина! Она знает шесть иностранных языков.
4. Не надевай это нарядное платье в школу. 5. Во время нашего путешествия мы видели множество огромных гор и живописных долин.
6. Я не могу назвать этот город процветающим: в нём слишком много бедных людей.
7. В противоположность своей старшей сестре она всегда носит скромную одежду.
8. Какая преданность!
9. Мы хотим повесить ваши рисунки в классе перед новогодним вечером.
10. Замок стоял на вершине скалы и казался огромным и опасным.

21 Listen to the poem "My Heart's in the Highlands", 46, and read it. Then learn it by heart.

MY HEART'S IN THE HIGHLANDS

(R. Burns)

My heart's in the Highlands, my heart is not here,
My heart's in the Highlands a-chasing¹ the deer,
A-chasing the wild deer and following the roe² —
My heart's in the Highlands, wherever I go!

Farewell³ to the Highlands, farewell to the North,
The birthplace of valour,⁴ the country of worth!⁵
Wherever I wander,⁶ wherever I rove,
The hills of the Highlands for ever I love.

Farewell to the mountains high cover'd with snow,
Farewell to the straths⁷ and green valleys below,

¹ a-chasing [ə'tseɪsɪŋ] — в погоне

² a roe [rəʊ] — косуля

³ farewell ['feəwel] — прощайте

⁴ valour ['vælə] — доблесть

⁵ worth [wɜ:θ] — достоинство

⁶ to wander ['wɒndə] — бродить

⁷ a strath [stræθ] — широкая горная долина

Farewell to the forests and wild-hanging woods,
Farewell to the torrents¹ and long-pouring² floods!³

My heart's in the Highlands, my heart is not here,
My heart's in the Highlands a-chasing the deer,
A-chasing the wild deer and following the roe —
My heart's in the Highlands, wherever I go!



22

Listen to the song “My Bonnie Lies Over the Ocean”, 47, and sing along.

One of the most famous Scottish songs, known all over the world is “My Bonnie Lies Over the Ocean”. It is a song about Prince Charles Edward Stewart who was known as Bonnie Prince Charlie because he was young and good-looking (“bonnie” means “good-looking”). He was also Scotland’s national hero who fought against the English in the 18th century but Charlie’s army was defeated.

LET US READ

23 Learn to read the proper names, 48.

Highlands ['haɪləndz], Lowlands ['ləʊləndz], Glasgow ['gla:zgəʊ], Edinburgh ['edɪnbərə], Athens ['æθɪnz], Athens of the North, Holyrood ['hɒlɪru:d], Palace (House), Princes ['prɪnsɪz] Street, Sir Walter Scott ['sɜ: 'wɔ:ltə 'skɒt], the Clyde

¹ a torrent ['tɔ:rənt] — горный поток

² long-pouring ['lɒŋ,pɔ:riŋ] — большой, мощный

³ flood [flʌd] — зд. река (обычно произносится как [flʌd])

[ðə klaid]¹, the Clyde Valley, the Royal Mile, the Cannongate ['kænənget], the Scott Monument [ðə 'skɒt 'mʌnjumənt].

24 Before reading the text say what you know about Scotland. See if you can answer these.

1. Where is Scotland situated?
2. What is its capital?
3. What other big cities in Scotland can you name?
4. What is the national symbol of the country?
5. Who is its patron saint?
6. What is Scotland washed by?
7. What rivers in Scotland do you know?
8. What else do you know about Scotland?

If you don't know the answers to some of the questions read the text (ex. 25) and find them.

25 Read the text and explain its title.

SCOTLAND THE BEAUTIFUL

He who has not seen Scotland does not really know Great Britain.

49. Scotland is a country in the United Kingdom to the north of England. Its symbol is a thistle, its patron saint is St. Andrew. The country is divided into Highlands and Lowlands. Most of the industry is concentrated in Lowlands, in the Clyde Valley. Glasgow is its largest and busiest town, Edinburgh is its capital. Glasgow and Edinburgh are the two great centres of Scotland. There is only 45 miles between them, and it will take you about an hour to get from Glasgow to Edinburgh by train but the cities are very different.

Glasgow is the heart of industry. It is a centre of business and trade. It is very busy, prosperous, dirty in some parts and smart in others, it is beautiful and ugly with its large port and busy streets.

Edinburgh is rather cold but attractive, very proud but friendly and has a great past. Edinburgh is known as the

¹ the Clyde — р. Клайд



Edinburgh Castle

Athens of the North. It is an ancient city and if you walk around it, you can feel history at every step. Practically every building has a tale to tell.

The most interesting parts of the city are the Old Town and the New Town. The Old Town lies between the Castle and Holyrood Palace. The Castle hangs over the city like some Disney cartoon — but it is real. The Castle, in fact, is older than the city. No one can say exactly when the first settlers came to live on the huge rock that stands high above Edinburgh. Later they built a castle that used to be a fortress and then a royal palace. It looks good in any weather but at night when it is floodlit¹ it looks just like a castle in a fairy tale. It is not surprising that the Castle attracts a lot of tourists.



Holyrood Gate

¹ floodlit ['flʌdlɪt] — подсвечен-
ный, освещённый огнями

The Edinburgh military tattoo¹ takes place every August and September and is known throughout the world. For 90 minutes on five or six nights a week, 600 people perform in the square in front of the Castle. The performers play military music and march to it. At the same time as the tattoo, you can go to the famous Edinburgh festival. The festival started in 1947. Every year the best performances from all over the world can be seen in Edinburgh. ☺



The Cannongate



Greyfriars Bobby

A line of streets, which runs from the Castle to Holyrood House, is called the Royal Mile. Holyrood House is a big royal palace which is the residence of the Queen when she is in Edinburgh. The most picturesque part of the Royal Mile is the Cannongate, which gives a good idea of what the Old Town was like. Closes (narrow passages) lead to little yards and attractive historical buildings. One of the most modest and yet one of the best known monuments in Edinburgh is a monument to a dog called Bobby. The dog belonged to John Gray. When he died Bobby lived near his grave for twenty-six years. Later Bobby was buried near his master and his statue in the Old Town has become a symbol of devotion. The Old Town is a striking contrast to the New Town with its white and beautiful streets lined

¹ tattoo [tə'tu:] — *an outdoor military show with music, usually at night*



The Scott Monument

with trees. Princes Street is the most beautiful street of the New Town. It has a lot of gardens on one side and it is also Edinburgh's popular shopping centre. Princes Street is connected with the name of the famous writer, Sir Walter Scott. A monument 200 feet high rises among green trees. They call it a poem of stone. It is the Scott Monument. Inside it there is a marble¹ statue of the writer, and of his favourite dog.

Princes Street lies between the New Town and the Old Town. The modern town is on the lower side, the old one — on the higher. They look at each other across the valley under Scotland's blue sky.

26 Match the proper names and their definitions.

The Edinburgh military tattoo

is a festival of performances that started in 1947.

The Royal Mile

is a show that takes place five or six nights a week in August and September.

The Cannongate

is the oldest part of Edinburgh.

Princes Street

is a line of streets that connects the Castle and Holyrood Palace.

Holyrood House

is a royal palace.

Glasgow

is an industrial centre of Scotland.

The Castle

is connected with the name of Walter Scott.

The Edinburgh festival

is the most picturesque part of the Royal Mile.

¹ marble ['ma:bł] — мраморный; мрамор

27 Now you have learnt some more facts about Scotland. Could you answer these questions?

1. Into what parts is Scotland divided geographically?
2. Where are most of the factories and plants situated in Scotland?
3. What big river flows across the country?
4. What are the two largest and busiest cities in Scotland?
5. The cities are far from each other, aren't they?
6. Which city has a large port?
7. Which of the two cities has got a longer history?

LET US TALK

28 Work in pairs. Imagine that one of you is a visitor to Edinburgh. He or she wants to get some information about the city. Your partner answers the questions. Find out:

- if Edinburgh is a young or ancient city;
- what the two most interesting parts of the city are;
- if the Castle is older than the city of Edinburgh;
- where exactly the Castle is situated;
- whose monument tourists can see in Princes Street;
- what palace is the residence of the Queen.

29 Complete the dialogue and then act it out pretending that you are Mike and Duncan.

Mike: Excuse me, I don't think we've met before. I'm Mike Crawford from London.

Duncan: ...

Mike: Edinburgh? I've never been to Scotland, but I'd love to go there some day. Is Edinburgh bigger than London?

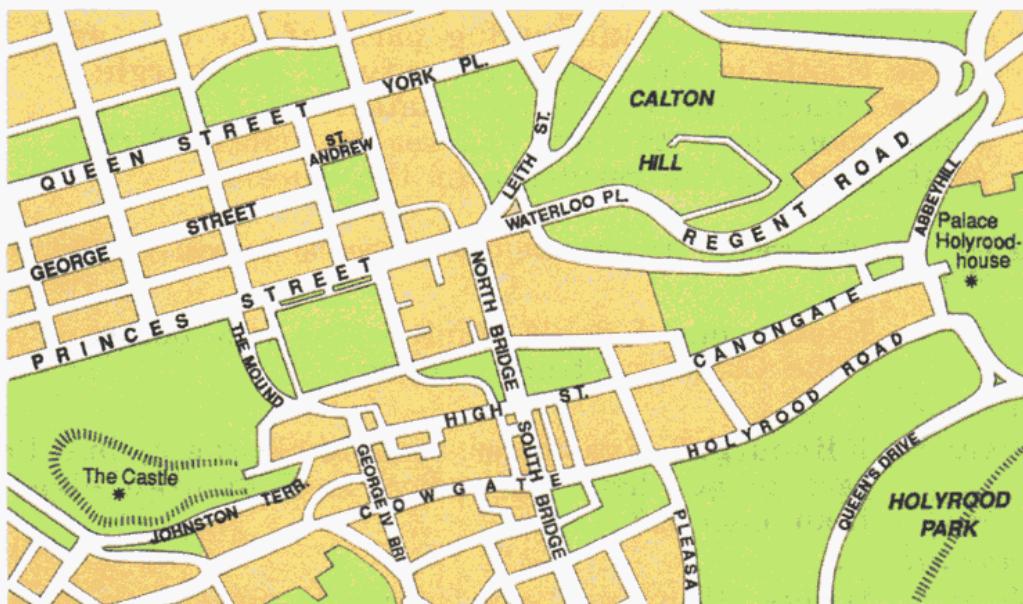
Duncan: ...

Mike: If everything you say is true it must be a great place to live! When I'm in Edinburgh, what should I see first?

Duncan: ...

- Mike:* That will take me several days, I'm sure. And what's the best place to buy souvenirs?
- Duncan:* ...
- Mike:* Princes Street. I must remember that. When is the best time to come to Edinburgh?
- Duncan:* ...
- Mike:* The military tattoo? What is it? What a strange name!
- Duncan:* ...
- Mike:* Thank you. I'll talk to Dad and ask him if we can go to Scotland instead of Spain next August.

- 30** Imagine that one of your classmates has not read the text "Scotland the Beautiful". Tell him or her everything you know about Glasgow and Edinburgh.
- 31** Study the map of Edinburgh and decide which places you would like to see. Explain your choice to your classmates, say which way you would like to choose and why.



- 32** Compare the two capitals — Moscow and Edinburgh. Mention: 1) size; 2) historical centres; 3) monuments; 4) main streets; 5) other streets and squares of the cities; 6) museums; 7) military parades.

LET US WRITE

33 Do ex. 4, ex. 9, ex. 13, ex. 17, ex. 20 in writing.

34 Your elder brother is a travel agent, but his English is not very good. At the same time you are very good at English. Help your brother to write short notes about Edinburgh, inviting tourists to visit this city. Make it as attractive as possible.

35 Look at the words again and get ready to write a spelling quiz on them.



to concentrate, a contrast, military, busy, trade, a grave, a rock, devotion, to bury, to hang, prosperous, picturesque, modest, smart, to strike, striking

LET US LISTEN AND DISCUSS

36 a) Make sure you know these words and expressions.

to camp [kæmp] — быть в походе, останавливаться на ночлег

to put up a tent — поставить палатку

b) Listen to the tape, 50, and say whose words they are:

1. "Here's some money. Go to the village and buy some meat."
2. "I'm so tired. You go."
3. "Here's the meat. Could you please cook it?"
4. "I'd like you to go and get some water."
5. "I don't want to get my clothes dirty."
6. "The meal is ready, come and eat it."
7. "I don't like to say 'No' all the time."

37 Describe Jim and Tim. What were they like?

38 Say which of the two friends

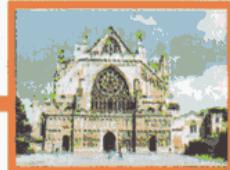
- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| — was hard-working | — made a fire |
| — was lazy | — cooked the meat |

- found a picturesque place at the foot of a rock
- was tired
- went to the village
- bought some meat and bread
- cut the bread
- got the water
- got the meal ready
- didn't like to say "No" all the time

You can answer "I don't know".

- 39 Tell the story on the part of Jim and on the part of Tim.

UNIT 14 WALES



LET US REVIEW

- 1 Ask questions using:

to climb the rock, a modest person, striking news, picturesque scenery, to be buried, a smart student, a smart dress, to develop trade, prosperous countries, great devotion.

- 2 Look through the list of words and group them into four categories. First read out the verbs, then the nouns, adjectives and adverbs.

Twin, wickedly, bank, please, strike, act, picturesque, prosperous, trade, scream, bury, rock, grave, exactly, modest, striking, hang, stupid, deer, earn, smart, devotion, concentrate, busy, military, thief.

- 3 Say what or who can be:

- 1) prosperous; 2) picturesque; 3) wicked; 4) busy, 5) pleased;
- 6) stupid; 7) striking; 8) smart.

EXAMPLE:

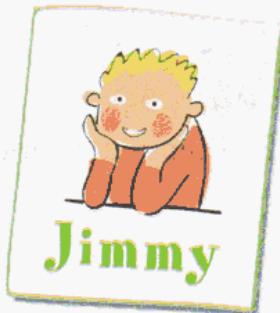
Farmers can be prosperous.
Companies can be prosperous.
Cities can be prosperous.

4 Say what people want (*would like*)/don't want (*wouldn't like*) Jimmy to do.

EXAMPLE: Mr Stones wants Jimmy to stop screaming at the top of his voice.



Stop screaming
at the top of your voice!



1. Mr Stones



Don't tell me silly stories.



Include all the boys on the list!

2. Jimmy's sister

3. Jimmy's friend



Don't stay in.



Set to work.

4. Jimmy's mother

5. Jimmy's teacher



Let's go to the Highlands
of Scotland.

6. Andrew



Don't eat so fast.

7. Jimmy's granny



Remind me
of the football match.

8. Jimmy's father

5 Complete the table.

EXAMPLE: My mother let me go to the cinema. — I was allowed to go to the cinema.

<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
1. The professor made us set to work.	1. —
2. —	2. The children were not allowed to take part in the procession.
3. —	3. He was made to solve the problem immediately.
4. My friend's mother didn't let him buy a collection of beautiful stones.	4. —
5. The doctor made the nurse test the patient's blood pressure again.	5. —

<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
6. —	6. Most of European governments were made to stop nuclear tests.
7. Our chemistry teacher doesn't let us mix these two gases.	7. —
8. —	8. Sam was never allowed to smoke.
9. I won't let you give sugar to the dog.	9. —
10. —	10. I was made to act on the stage, though I don't like performing.

FOCUS

have to do something
have got to do something



I **have to get up** at 5. = I've **got to get up** at 5.
 Sorry, we **have to go**. = Sorry, we've **got to go**.



Nelly **doesn't have to cook** herself. = Nelly **hasn't got to cook** herself.
 They **don't have to start** early. = They **haven't got to start** early.



Do we **have to return** at six? = Have we **got to return** at six?
 Does she **have to leave** the university? = Has she **got to leave** the university?

Wh?

When do you have to = When have you got to arrive?

Why does she have to stay = Why has she got to stay alone?



6 Paraphrase using the construction *have got to do something*.

1. Ann has to run.
2. Billy has to play the piano every evening.
3. We don't have to wake him so early.
4. Where do you have to go?
5. They don't have to learn Welsh.
6. I have to phone Phil.

7 Work in pairs. Ask why your partner has to do something. Let him explain the reason to you. Choose either of the two constructions.

EXAMPLE:

1: P₁: I've got to go.

P₂: Why have you got to go now?

P₁: I've got to go because my mother is waiting for me.
I promised her to come at six.

EXAMPLE:

2: P₁: I have to wake at five.

P₂: Why do you have to wake at five?

P₁: I have to wake at five because my father takes me fishing and we are leaving at six.

1. I've got to get up early.
2. I have to stay at home today.
3. I have to call Mary at once.
4. I've got to buy new shoes.
5. I've got to send a letter to him at once.
6. I've got to take my little brother to the zoo.
7. I have to do this exercise in writing.
8. I have to translate this article.
9. I have to write a short story about some animal.
10. I've got to run now.

LET US READ AND LEARN

FOCUS

Phrasal Verb

to look

1. to look at — посмотреть на
Don't look at me so angrily!

2. **to look for** — искать
I am looking for my glasses and I can't find them.
3. **to look through** — просмотреть, бегло прочитать
Look through the newspaper and tell me about the most important sports matches.
4. **to look after** — присматривать, ухаживать
Who looks after your cat when you go away?
5. **to look up (in)** — посмотреть (в каком-то источнике)
If you don't know the word, look it up in the dictionary.

8 Write *for, up (in), at, after, through* after the verb *to look* in each sentence.

1. People like to look ... animals at the zoo.
2. She took a pencil out of the pocket and looked around ... some paper.
3. Will you look ... my garden while I'm away?
4. They will look ... the projects and choose the best.
5. If you don't know the word, you should look it ... in the dictionary.
6. Where have you been? I've been looking ... you all over.
7. Where is little Ann? Who is looking ... the baby?

FOCUS

Complex Object

		see watch notice	the boys the girl me us him her it you them	do/doing sth
Subject	hear			
	feel			do/doing sth

I saw Mother cook/cooking a pie.
We did not notice them come/coming in.
Did you hear Nick sing/singing at the party?
Mr Brown felt the little girl touch his hand.

1. We did not notice them come back.
2. Mother watched the children playing.
3. Who saw Mr Smith swim across the river?
4. I didn't hear you come in.
5. She suddenly felt someone touch her on the shoulder.
6. Can you hear a child crying?

1. Мы не заметили, как они вернулись.
2. Мама наблюдала, как дети играли.
3. Кто видел, что мистер Смит переплыл реку?
4. Я не слышал, как ты вошёл.
5. Внезапно она почувствовала, как кто-то дотронулся до её плеча.
6. Ты слышишь, как плачет ребёнок?



9 Make up sentences.

I | saw/never saw
watched/never
watched
noticed/never
noticed
heard/never heard

my friend(s)
my mother
my father
my granny
my teacher(s)
my sister
my brother

cry/crying
scream at the top
of his/her voice
fight
smoke
do harm to plants
and animals
tell lies

10 Work in pairs. Ask your friend if he/she *has ever seen, watched, noticed or heard* the following.

EXAMPLE:

- Have you ever seen a hunter shoot an animal?
- No, I haven't. Have you?
- Yes, I have.

- 1) a hunter shoot an animal;
- 2) a squirrel climb up a tree;
- 3) a hare run across the field;

- 4) a kitten play with a mouse;
- 5) an elephant carry people;
- 6) a horse winning a race;
- 7) a monkey reading a book;
- 8) a bear dancing;
- 9) a deer eat green grass;
- 10) a pigeon sing.

11 Express the same in English.

1. Я никогда не слышал, как эта девочка смеётся. Я никогда не видел, как она плачет. 2. Мы не заметили, как он вышел из класса. 3. Бетти любила наблюдать, как желтые листья падают с деревьев. 4. Все любят слушать, как поёт Майкл Джексон? 5. Я почувствовала, как что-то горячее коснулось моей ноги. 6. Ты когда-нибудь видел, как встаёт солнце? 7. Маленький принц каждый день наблюдал за тем, как садится солнце. 8. Мама с гордостью наблюдала, как её дочь играла на пианино. 9. Ты любишь смотреть, как она танцует? 10. Я много раз слышала, как она читает книги своим маленьким детям.

12 a) Read and guess what the underlined words mean.

1. Masha has lost her passport ['pa:sport]. She can't find it anywhere.
2. The president of the company has a lot of visitors ['vɪzɪtəz].
3. A party of climbers ['klaiməz] was on their way to Everest ['evərɪst].

b) Look these words up to make sure that you have guessed right.

13 Read the words, look them up and then study the word combinations and sentences to know how to use them.

to enter ['entə] (*v*): to enter a room, to enter a house, to enter a building. Please enter the house by the back door. He stopped for a second before he entered the room. Knock before you enter.

to enter college, to enter university: My elder brother is going to enter university next year. Is it difficult to enter Moscow State University?

agriculture ['ægrɪ,kʌltʃə] (*n, no plural*): Agriculture is farming which means growing things and keeping animals. What do you know about agriculture in Britain?

agricultural [,ægrɪ'kʌltʃərəl] (*adj*): agricultural workers, an agricultural land, an agricultural country, agricultural products. There is a lot of agricultural land in the south-east of England.

to argue ['a:gju:] (*v*): to argue with somebody about something. Don't argue with your teacher about the things you don't understand. Stop arguing with me, do as I say.

an argument ['a:gjumənt] (*n*): a long argument, a strong argument, an argument about something. After a long argument we decided where to go on holiday. There should be no arguments between friends.

to injure ['indʒə] (*v*): to injure people, to injure animals, to injure one's hand (foot, etc.). Jack fell from the tree and injured his back.

to be injured, to be badly injured, to be injured in an accident: Two people were killed and seven were injured when the car hit the bus.

injured: an injured person, an injured animal. The injured man was taken to hospital.

to rescue ['reskju:] (*v*): to rescue a person, to rescue an animal, to rescue a bird. He jumped into the river and rescued the child who couldn't swim.

rescue (*n*): to come to someone's rescue, to go to someone's rescue. The child was alone in the burning house but the firemen came to his rescue.

Rescue Service: The Mountain Rescue Service has to go out to help the climbers who need them.

to serve [sɜ:v] (*v*): to serve in the army. Did he serve in the army for two years? It serves you (her, him) right. It serves her right that she feels sick — she has eaten too much.

a service (*n*): government service, hotel service. The food in the restaurant was good but the service was poor. Has the town got a good bus service?

at one's service: I'm at your service if you need me.

brief [bri:f] (*adj*): a brief letter, a brief talk, a brief look, a brief holiday, a brief visit. We had a brief holiday last year, we spent only a week in the Crimea.

in brief — in a few words: Tell me the story in brief.

a cathedral [kə'θi:drl] (*n*): a beautiful cathedral, to admire the cathedral. — What is the cathedral, Mummy? — It is a big and important church, dear. — What cathedrals do you know in London? — The most famous is St. Paul's Cathedral in the City.

fluent ['flu:ənt] (*adj*): to be fluent in English (French, *etc.*), to speak fluent Russian (Italian, *etc*). If a person speaks fluent English he can speak the language easily and correctly.

fluently (*adv*): The boy could speak two languages fluently.

a stream [stri:m] (*n*): a stream of water, a narrow stream, a mountain stream, a stream in the valley. A stream is a small river. There were streams of water running down the streets after the rain.

a path [pa:θ] (*n*): a garden path, a path through the forest, to walk along the path. A path is a long narrow line of ground made by or for people walking. Along the country road there is usually a narrow path for people to walk on.

14 Choose the right item.

EXAMPLE: This path is quite Welsh is not ... spoken in the world. (wide, widely) — This path is quite wide. Welsh is not widely spoken in the world.

1. They are ... drivers. They drive their cars (*dangerously, dangerous*)
2. He got up ... and left the room without saying a word. She gave us a ... look but did not say a word. (*quickly, quick*)
3. Do you think his English is ... ? Does he speak English ... ? (*fluent, fluently*)
4. His ... speech impressed me greatly. He didn't give us any details about the trip, he spoke very (*brief, briefly*)

5. Walk across the road My father is a ... driver: he has never had any problems. (*careful, carefully*)
6. — I have a ... plan. Many years ago people called this place (*differently, different*)

15 Make up adjectives on the model. Try and guess their meanings.

EXAMPLE: music — musical (музыкальный)

industry —	nature ¹ —
culture —	nation ² —
region —	agriculture —
tradition —	comic —

FOCUS

books	on	the history of Scotland the culture of the country geography	exams	in	mathematics geography history
lectures			classes		
notes			marks		
facts			lessons		
stories					
articles ³					

David reads a lot of books **on** travels in China.
Professor Pullin gives wonderful lectures **on** the history of Wales.

Could I have a book of your notes **on** Scotland?
Do you know any facts **on** the culture of ancient Greece?
What is your mark **in** French?
Who gives you classes **in** maths?
When are you having your last exam **in** geography?

16 Choose the right preposition: **on** or **in**.

1. Susie is finishing her book ... the culture of ancient Romans.

¹ notice the difference: ['neɪtsə — 'nætsfrəl]

² notice the difference: ['neɪʃn — 'næʃnəl]

³ you can also use all these words with the preposition **about**: books **about** animals, etc.

2. Could I look through your notes ... the agriculture of the region?
3. When do you have classes ... the English Literature?
4. What mark did Henry get ... PE last term?
5. When are you having your final exam ... Latin?
6. Have you ever read any articles ... geography?
7. Tell me Nick's mark ... music.

17 Listen to the tape,  51, and read the proverb, then learn it by heart.

HE WHO KNOWS

He who knows not, and knows not that he knows not, is a fool. Shun¹ him.

He who knows not, and knows that he knows not, is a child. Teach him.

He who knows, and knows not that he knows, is asleep. Wake him.

He who knows, and knows that he knows, is wise.
Follow him.

(a Persian² proverb)

LET US READ

18 Read the dialogue and give it a title,  52.

Ann: Hi, Susie, haven't seen you for a long time! What have you been doing? Where have you been hiding?

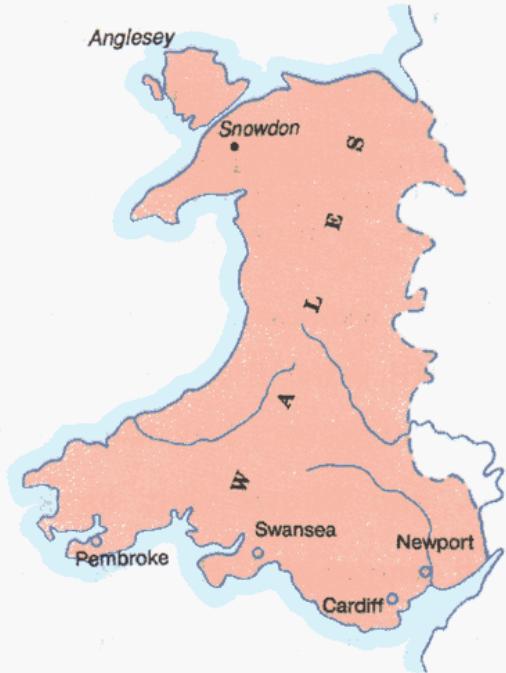
Susie: I've been working on my talk about Wales for the last week and spent many hours in the library.

Ann: Wales? What can be interesting about that part of Britain? No big cities, no picturesque scenery, no interesting facts on the history of the country.

Susie: Aren't there? You can't imagine, Ann, how wrong you are here. The book I'm reading says: "Though visitors don't need passports to cross the border from England into Wales, they soon realize that

¹ to shun [ʃʌn] — избегать, остерегаться

² Persian ['pɜ:sʃən] — персидский



they are entering a country with its own geography, culture, traditions and language."

Ann: What do you mean? Don't the Welsh speak English?

Susie: They do. But the Welsh language is spoken widely, especially in the north of the country and it is still the first language for many people. By the way English is taught side by side with Welsh in schools.

Ann: Is Welsh different from English?

Susie: Very much so. Welsh is one of the Celtic¹ languages, like Scottish and Irish Gaelic.² Even if your English is fluent you won't be able to understand Welsh.

Ann: Interesting. And what about the cities? I hear³ that Wales is agricultural, there are few cities there, rather small and unimportant.

Susie: Let's not argue, but look it up in the book I'm reading. I know at least one big city in Wales. It's Cardiff, the capital and the main port.

¹ Celtic ['keltik] — кельтский

² Gaelic ['geilik] — гээльский

³ I hear — Я слышал(а)

"Eisteddfod"

"church"

"dau"

"Dwygyfylchi"

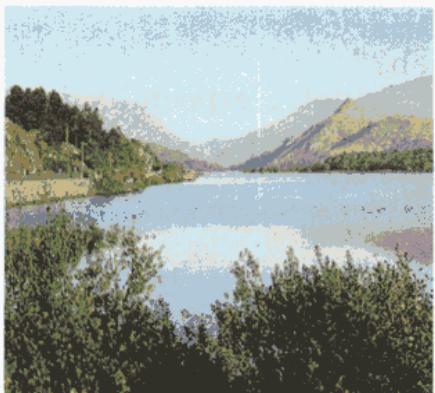
"Pwllheli"

"un"

"Clwyd"

Ann (*looking through the book*): You are right. It says: "Cardiff is an industrial city, which also has a castle, a cathedral, a university. There are other big towns in Wales too, Swansea and Newport among them." OK. But what about the scenery, the history, the culture?

Susie: The west coast, mid Wales and North Wales are wild and beautiful. Wales has high mountains, including Snowdon, the second highest mountain in Britain.



Ann: I have always thought that Wales is a land of green fields, forests and farms.

Susie: And you have been right. But it is also a land of mountains and valleys, streams and waterfalls. In North Wales you can follow mountain paths for miles and miles.

Ann: Tell me a few words about Mount Snowdon.

Susie: Got interested? OK. In summer, when the sun is shining, Snowdon looks very peaceful and beautiful. A little train runs to the top and the walk is not at all hard. But in winter the mountains can become very dangerous.

Ann: But do climbers go there?

Susie: They do, but every year climbers get lost in bad weather or fall and injure themselves. When this happens, the Mountain Rescue Service¹ has to go out to look for the climbers.

Ann: I see. And what about Welsh traditions and the history of the country?

Susie: Sorry, Ann. I've got to run. Here are my notes. I made them during the lecture by Mr Roger Davis, a visiting professor from Wales. If you're really interested you can look through my notes. They are all on Welsh traditions and culture. Though they are very brief you can find them useful.

19 Remember who said that.

1. "I spent many hours in the library."
2. "Don't the Welsh speak English?"
3. "The Welsh language is spoken widely, especially in the north of the country."
4. "The English themselves do not understand Welsh."
5. "Wales is agricultural."
6. "I know at least one big city in Wales."
7. "Cardiff is an industrial city, which also has a castle, a cathedral, a university."

¹ the Mountain Rescue Service ['sɜ:vɪs] — горноспасательная служба

8. "Snowdon is the second highest mountain in Britain."
9. "Climbers get lost in bad weather."
10. "I've got to run. Here are my notes."

20 These are the notes Ann made after her talk with Susie. Was Ann attentive? Did she remember everything right? Read Ann's notes and correct them if necessary.

Wales — an industrial country. No big cities, except Cardiff, its capital. You need a passport to travel from England to Wales. The Welsh speak two languages (English and Welsh), especially in the south. English is taught in schools, Welsh is not, though the two languages are very much alike. The English can easily understand Welsh. Cardiff is an agricultural town. The scenery in Wales is picturesque and wild, especially in the south. There are few mountains, which are rather low and not dangerous. Climbers seldom visit these places. Mount Snowdon, situated in Wales, is the highest mountain in Britain. Wales is a land of valleys, streams and waterfalls.

LET US TALK

21 Prove that Wales is an interesting place to visit.
Speak on:

- a) its scenery
- b) its cities
- c) its language

22 Imagine that your friend has got a letter from his/her Welsh friend inviting him/her to visit Wales. He is not sure that he would like to go. Prove that Wales is an interesting place to visit. Work in pairs.

23 Say what you think is most interesting about Wales and what places there you find most attractive.

24 You are going to give a talk about Wales in your geography class. Get ready with interesting facts about this part of Britain. Don't forget to mention: *its symbol, its saint, its location, its language, its capital.*

25 You are going to give a talk about the place you live in. Get ready with some facts about it. (Ex. 24 can help you.)

LET US WRITE

- 26 Do ex. 1, ex. 2, ex. 4, ex. 5, ex. 11 in writing.
- 27 Look through ex. 18 and write what Ann wanted to know about Wales (10 pieces of information).

EXAMPLE: Ann wanted to know if climbers went to Snowdon in winter.

- 28 Complete the text using the prepositions *at, for, through, after, up, in*.

Doctors say that happiness is the secret of good health. This means we all have to look ... ourselves. When we lose some things we shouldn't get angry but just look ... them trying to find them. If we don't understand some words people use, we should look them the encyclopaedias¹ and we shouldn't get angry either. We should also remember that praise is good for us, too. Look ... your friend and say how wonderful he is. Then he will believe he is wonderful. Look ... your little sister's copybook and say she is a good child. She will certainly be one. So remember, if we want to be happy and healthy, we need people around us who keep telling us how wonderful we are.

- 29 This is a traditional Welsh story. a) Open the brackets to make it complete. b) Give the story a title. c) Expand² the story in writing to make it more interesting.

This story is (*set*) in Wales in the Middle Ages. There was a prince whose name (*be*) Llewellyn [lu:'elin]. He (*live*) in the valley. He (*have*) a baby son. He also (*have*) a dog called Gelert. One day the prince (*go*) hunting. He (*leave*) the dog (*look*) after the baby. Some wolves (*come*) out of a wood. They (*run*) to the cottage. The dog (*see*) the wolves and (*hide*) the baby. Then he (*run*) outside and (*fight*) the wolves. He (*kill*) two but was wounded. He was tired and (*lie*) down to sleep. The prince (*return*). He (*see*) the dog all in blood. He (*notice*) that his son's bed was empty. He

¹ an encyclopaedia [in,saiklə'pi:dɪə] — энциклопедия

² to expand [ɪk'spænd] — расширять

(take) his sword¹ and (kill) the dog while it (sleep). Then he (hear) the baby (cry) and (find) him. Through the window he (see) the two dead wolves. Then he (understand). He (carry) the dog to the top of a hill and buried it. He (collect) a lot of stones to mark the grave. You can still (see) it today at Bedgelert.

30 Look at the words again and get ready to write a spelling quiz on them.



a passport, a visitor, a climber, to enter (to enter college), agriculture, agricultural, to argue, an argument, to injure (to be injured), to rescue, rescue, Rescue Service, to serve, a service, at one's service, brief, in brief, a cathedral, fluent, fluently, a stream, a path

LET US LISTEN AND DISCUSS

31 a) Make sure you know this expression:

weak point [,wɪk 'pɔɪnt] — слабое место, слабость

b) Listen to the tape, 53, and explain the title of the story.

32 Listen to the story "Three Answers" again and complete these sentences.

1. Ed was a ... and worked for a
2. He wrote about his travels in his
3. Ed had one weak point: he liked to ... very much.
4. Stupid people sometimes said ... things.
5. Once a man said something which Ed couldn't
6. "There are always three answers to every question:"

33 Tell the story "Three Answers" on the part of Ed.

¹ a sword [sɔ:d] — меч

THE USA

UNIT 15

HOW MUCH DO WE KNOW ABOUT THE USA?

You already know some facts about the United States of America and its people.

We would like you to remember certain things about the US. So...

LET US REVIEW

1 Choose the right item.

1. Christopher Columbus discovered America in ...
a) 1402 c) 1492
b) 1482 d) 1392
2. Christopher Columbus discovered ...
a) Central America c) North America
b) South America d) the United States of America
3. The first English settlements appeared in ...
a) North America in the 17th century c) Central America in the 16th century
b) South America in the 17th century d) America in the 18th century
4. The “Mayflower” is ...
a) the name of a season c) the name of a flower
b) the name of the first English settlement in America d) the name of the ship that sailed from Plymouth for the New World in 1620

5. The first colonists started the tradition of ...

- a) Halloween c) Thanksgiving Day
- b) Independence Day d) Memorial Day

6. The first president of the US was ...

- a) George Washington c) Jeffrey Jefferson
- b) Abraham Lincoln d) Bill Clinton

7. The capital of the US is ...

- a) Washington, D. C. c) New York
- b) Washington d) Philadelphia

8. There were ... colonies in America in 1773.

- a) 13 b) 7 c) 21 d) 10

9. Jeans are clothes worn by ...

- a) cowboys in the Wild West c) Levi Strauss people
- b) people all over the world d) actors in America

10. The American flag is often called ...

- a) Union Jack c) the Red Dragon
- b) the Stars and Stripes d) the White Eagle

11. There are ... stripes on the American flag.

- a) 7 b) 6 c) 50 d) 13

12. The official national symbol of the USA is ...

- a) the Statue of Liberty c) the turkey
- b) the eagle d) the "Mayflower"

2 Answer the following questions, if necessary consult Lessons 40, 43–52 of your Textbook IV and Lesson 14 of your Reader IV.

1. What do you remember about the discoverer of America? (Where was he born? Where did he live? What country was he looking for in 1492 when he discovered the new continent?)

2. What do you know about the first English settlements in America and the first English colonists? (When and why did England become interested in America? When did the

“Mayflower” sail to America? What did they call the part of America where they set up their first colony? What kind of life did they lead?)

3. There were 13 colonies in America in 1773, weren’t there?

4. Why did people in America fight for their independence from England?

5. How can you characterize the colonists?

6. What big US cities do you know?

7. How many cents are there in a dollar? What are other American coins? How many cents are there in a nickel, a dime and a quarter?

8. What is the name of the US city where Levi Strauss began making special clothes? What clothes were they?

9. What are the colours of the American flag? Why are there 50 stars on the flag? Why are there 13 stripes on it? What do people often call the American flag?

10. The eagle became the official national symbol of the USA in 1782, didn’t it? What symbol is an olive branch? What symbol is arrows? Where can you see the picture of the eagle with an olive branch and arrows?

11. What do Americans celebrate on the 4th of July?

12. The capital of the USA is Washington, D. C., isn’t it? What do the letters D. C. stand for? Why do people say “Washington, D. C.” when they speak about the US capital?

3 After doing ex. 1 and ex. 2 decide who in your class knows the country (and its people) best. Let him be a visiting professor from New York and ask him:

- 1) why Washington, D. C. is a special city;
- 2) what oceans wash the US in the east and in the west;
- 3) what he can tell you about the Statue of Liberty;
- 4) what he can tell you about the American flag;
- 5) when the story of the “Wild West” began and why people went west;
- 6) who native Americans are and what their life in the USA nowadays is like;
- 7) when and why Americans began to celebrate Thanksgiving Day.

Uncountables

money	information
hair	weather
advice	knowledge
work	progress

It is useful **information**.
 What wonderful **advice**!
 What long **hair**!
 It is fresh **milk**.
 What fine **weather**!
 What big **money**!
 What clean **air**!
 It is such tasty **water**.
 What interesting **work**!
 It is such necessary **news**.
 It is such great **progress**.
 It is important **knowledge**.

*Countables
in the singular*

It is a poor answer.
 It is an easy job.
 It is such a lovely flower!
 She is such a nice girl!
 What an interesting trip!
 What a dangerous road!

Countables in the plural

They are short stories.
 These are attractive ideas.
 They are such funny boys.
 What clever animals!



- 4 Use the articles *a/an* where necessary to make the story complete. Retell the story.

MOTHER'S ADVICE

Harry came to his mother one morning and said to her, "No one at my school likes me, Mother. The teachers don't, and the children don't. Even the cleaners and the bus drivers hate me."

"Well, Harry," his mother answered. "It is such ... sad news. Perhaps you aren't very nice to them. If ... few ... people don't like ... person it may not be his fault;¹ but if ... lot of ... people don't, there is usually something wrong with such ... person and he really needs to change."

¹ fault [fɔ:l t] — вина

"That's ... good advice, Mother," Harry said. "But I'm too old to change. I don't want to go to school."

"Don't be so silly, Harry," his mother said. "You have to go. You're quite well, and you have still ... important things to learn. And besides that, you're the headmaster of the school."

LET US READ

- 5 Learn to read these proper names, 54.

Kennedy Airport [,kenədɪ 'eəpɔ:t], Hollywood ['hɒlɪwʊ:d], Disneyland ['dɪznilænd], California [,kæli'fɔ:nɪə], Philadelphia [,filə'delfiə], Texas ['teksəs], Manhattan [mæn'hætn], the Bronx Zoo [,brɔ:nks 'zu:], the Metropolitan (Museum) [ðə ,metrə-'pɒlitən], the Niagara Falls [ðə nai,ægərə 'fɔ:lz].

- 6 Read the dialogue, 55, and say what other places in the USA the children could visit besides the places that they are going to see.

A TRIP TO THE USA

Teacher: Hi, everybody! I've got great news for you. At the end of April your group — the winners of "English Learners Contest"¹ — is going to the USA!

Tanya: It's fantastic!
Misha: Wow! } (together)

Volodya: I can't believe it! It's too good to be true.

Irina: I knew it! I knew it!

Teacher: Please be quiet. I'm here to tell you all you want to know, but if you make so much noise I won't be able to do it.

Volodya: When are we leaving? What places are we going to visit?

Teacher: We are starting on the 23rd of April and we are flying from Sheremetyevo to New York, Kennedy Airport.

¹ a contest ['kɒntest] — конкурс

- Tanya:* How long are we going to stay in New York?
- Teacher:* Only two days, but it's long enough to see the main sights: the Statue of Liberty, Manhattan, the famous skyscrapers, the Metropolitan and the Bronx Zoo.
- Irina:* But New York is in the east and I have always wanted to see Hollywood and Disneyland. Are we going to go to California too?
- Teacher:* Yes, we are, but only at the end of our trip. Between New York and California we'll go to Philadelphia, the birthplace of American democracy, and Washington, D. C.
- Misha:* Just Philadelphia and Washington? Aren't we going to Texas? I've always wanted to meet cowboys or even take part in a rodeo [rəʊ'deɪəʊ].
- Tanya:* What's a rodeo, Misha?
- Misha:* Don't you know? It's when cowboys ride wild horses or catch wild horses throwing a lasso [læ'su:]. I saw it in a film.
- Volodya:* I'd like to see the Niagara Falls. Could we please go there?
- Teacher:* Sorry, boys, not this time. We've got only ten days and four wonderful places to see. I'm sure you'll love them. But if you win another contest (and we're having it in May) who knows ... we may have a chance...

7 Work in pairs. Imagine that one of you knows everything about the trip to the USA (ex. 6) and the other knows very little. Ask questions to find out more.

EXAMPLE: The group of children won the English learners contest.
a) When did the contest take place? — It was in September last year.
b) How many schools took part in it? — Four.
c) Where did the contest take place? — In school 28.

1. They are flying from Sheremetyevo to New York, Kennedy Airport.
2. They are going to stay in New York for two days.
3. They won't visit Texas.

4. A rodeo is an exciting show.
5. The Niagara Falls is a wonderful place to visit.

8 Say what the group of children could see in New York, Philadelphia, Washington, D. C., and California. If necessary, look it up or ask your parents and teachers.

9 Role play the dialogue from ex. 6.

LET US TALK

10 a) Look at the map, say what places the children visited and why, use the words from the word box.

EXAMPLE: First the children went to Shannon to make a stop.

first, then, after that, later, finally



b) Imagine that you are planning a tour around the world. Say where you are going to go and why. Use the information on page 211.

EXAMPLE: First I'm going to Greece to see the Acropolis [ə'krɒpəlɪs].

Egypt	the Great Sphinx and the pyramids ['pɪrəmɪdz]
Greece	the place of the first Olympic Games
Rome	the ancient ruins
India	elephants
France	the Eiffel Tower [,aɪfl 'taʊə]

c) Choose any places you would like to visit and say why.

EXAMPLE: I would like to go to Paris to visit the Louvre ['luvr(ə)].

- 11** We are sure that most of you would like to go to the USA. Think of five good reasons why you would like to go there.
- 12** Imagine that you are going to visit the USA. What means of transport will you choose:

- 1) to get to the country;
- 2) to travel about the country? Why?

- 13** Retell the story "Mother's Advice" from ex. 4 in reported speech.

LET US WRITE

- 14** Do ex. 1, ex. 3, ex. 4 in writing.

- 15** Write a short story about the characters from ex. 6 visiting the USA.

- 16** Express the same in English.

1. Какого цвета волосы твоей сестры? 2. Какого цвета глаза твоей сестры? 3. Это очень интересные сведения.
4. Это очень интересные рассказы. 5. Это очень интересная сказка.
6. Какие печальные новости! 7. Какие печальные дети!
8. Какая печальная женщина!
9. Это такие смешные котята!
10. Это такая смешная обезьянка!
11. Это такая смешная новость!

UNIT 16 GEOGRAPHICAL OUTLOOK



LET US REVIEW

1 Work in pairs. Interview your partner. Find out:

- 1) if he/she lives in an agricultural area, where exactly;
- 2) if he/she has ever argued with his/her parents (teachers), when exactly;
- 3) if he/she has been badly injured, when exactly;
- 4) if he/she has any relatives (friends) at University, when they entered their universities;
- 5) if he/she can remember a book in which a character rescued a person or an animal and what book it was;
- 6) if he/she has ever helped injured people or injured animals and where exactly it was;
- 7) when and why he/she writes brief letters, has brief talks or brief holidays;
- 8) what languages he/she speaks fluently.

2 Complete the situations saying you would like other people to do the things you don't want to do and specify¹ them.

EXAMPLE: I don't want to speak to Mr Winston. I want
I don't want to speak to Mr Winston. I want my granny to speak to him. I want her to speak to Mr Winston on Monday.

1. I wouldn't like to enter this college. I would like
2. I don't expect you to finish the job. I expect
3. I don't want to write a letter to John. I want
4. I don't expect to look after Nelly's cat. I expect
5. I wouldn't like to invite Stephen to our party. I would like
6. I don't want to pay for the ticket. I want

¹ to specify ['spesifai] — уточнять

3 Read the headlines and match the beginnings of the stories with them.

D AT YOUR SERVICE, SIR!

C A SURPRISE

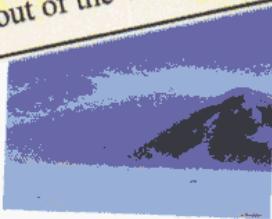
Mary's granny was nearly 70 and Mary's parents wanted to give the old lady a nice birthday present. But their idea of "a nice present" was different from Mary's. One day they even had a long argument about...



1

John's brother was fast asleep when the telephone rang. He woke up immediately and in less than five minutes he was ready to start.
"There will be a lot of injured people in this awful snowfall," he thought looking out of the window...

3



A A BRIEF ANSWER

B THE MOUNTAIN RESCUE SERVICE AT WORK

Allan Hobbs was a very lazy student at school. Nobody could make him work or be helpful. He fought with other pupils, was rude to the teachers. One day a letter came to Allan's parents with his school record¹...

2



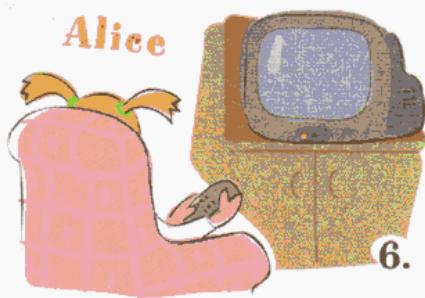
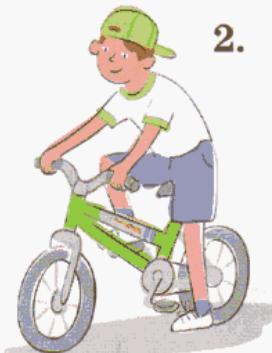
When Dave Morgan was young, he played a lot of games and he was thin and strong. But when he was forty-five, he began to get fat and slow down. His speech was not as fluent as before, and when he walked rather fast he felt a sudden pain in his heart. He did not do anything about this for a long time, but finally...

4

¹ school record — школьная характеристика

4 Look at the pictures and ask Mrs Morgan to let these people and animals do what they want.

EXAMPLE: Let Nelly wash up.



5 Complete the situations saying when and where you saw (heard, watched, noticed) people doing these things.

EXAMPLE: I saw Alice (to play) with her little kitten
I saw Alice playing with her little kitten in the yard last Sunday.

1. I noticed Susie (*to pass*) our school. 2. I heard David (*to play*) rock music. 3. I watched Chris (*to climb*) that dangerous hill. 4. I saw Peter (*to speak*) to Mark. 5. I watched Betty (*to put*) a white dress on her doll.

6 Express the same in English.

- Позволь нам остаться с тобой.
- Мы полагаем, что наши родители вернутся рано.
- Мне бы хотелось, чтобы ты выпил стакан молока.
- Я слышала, как кто-то звонил в дверь.
- Мы наблюдали за тем, как утятя плавали в реке.
- Я хочу, чтобы мой брат поступил в Московский университет.
- Я заметила, что Николай спит в кресле.
- Я слышала, как доктор Смит играет на скрипке.
- Мы полагаем, что скоро придёт весна.

LET US READ AND LEARN

FOCUS

The Past Perfect Tense

had + Ved/V₃

by 5 o'clock; *by* Sunday; *by* that time; *by* the end of the year; *by* the second of May

My cousin **had left** *by* the first of April.

My father **had written** the letter *by* that time.

... *when* ...; ... *after* ...; ... *before* ...

The train **had** already left *when* we arrived.
Mother **had** cleaned the flat *before* her cousin returned.
After she **had** cried she felt better.

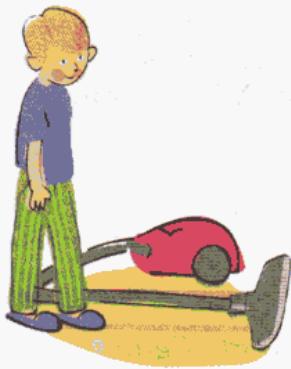
The students **hadn't** finished the test *when* the bell rang.
When we arrived, the train **hadn't** left yet.

- **Had** you **read** the book up to the end *before* she asked you for it?
— Yes, I **had**.

- 7 Look at the pictures and say what **had** happened **before** Alex came back home from school.

EXAMPLE: Bob had cleaned the flat with a vacuum cleaner before Alex came back home from school.

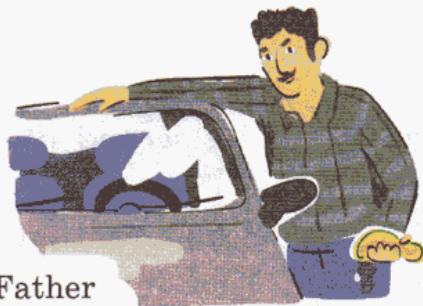
1. Bob



2. Mother



3. Granny



4. Father

5. Caroline and Ann



6. Fred



7. Uncle Roger



8. Frieda



- 8 Ann had lived in London for two years. When she returned to Los Angeles she understood that many things had changed in her city. Say what had changed.

EXAMPLE: A new school had appeared near her house.

a new school/to appear
her cousins/to grow
the roads/to become wider
the streets/to become
cleaner

the shops/to get more modern
a lot of Japanese cars/to appear

- 9 a) Read and guess what the underlined words mean.

1. Most of the farmland ['fa:mblænd] in England is in the southeast.

2. Grasslands ['gra:slændz] are good for sheep to feed on.
3. There are few wildlands ['waɪldlændz] left in Britain. Most of them are in the north. In the USA people can enjoy the beauty of wild America in parks, forests and wildlands.
4. Our great-grandparents [,greit'grænd,peərənts] are our grandparents' parents.
5. A canoe [kə'nue:] is an Indian boat.
6. Siberia is famous for its endless ['endlis] forests.
7. Rivers are used as waterways ['wɔ:təweɪz].

b) Look these words up in your vocabulary to make sure that you have guessed right.

10 Read the words, look them up and then study the word combinations and sentences to know how to use them.

mighty ['maɪti] (*adj*): a mighty nation, a mighty army, a mighty king, a mighty empire. The Atlantic is a mighty ocean.

to rise [raɪz], rose, risen (*v*): The River Volga rises in the Valdai Hills. The Angara rises in Lake Baikal. The Nile rises in Lake Victoria.

to stretch [stretʃ] (*v*): to stretch out one's arm, to stretch the rope, to stretch one's legs. The forests stretched for miles. The valley stretched away into the distance as far as the eye could see. She got out of bed and stretched. He stretched out his arm to try and get the apple. I decided to stretch my legs after dinner. The wicked children stretched the rope across the path.

a shore [ʃɔ:] (*n*): a sea shore, shores of a lake, on the shore of the ocean, to walk along the shore. It is difficult to walk on such a rocky shore. She sells seashells on the seashore. We could see some tall trees on the other shore of the lake.

a beach [bi:tʃ] (*n*): a sandy beach, a beach ball, a beach chair. They went down to the beach for a swim. We sat on the beach and ate our sandwiches. Some of the beaches are badly littered.

a desert ['dezət] (*n*): The Sahara Desert, a hot desert wind, desert areas, a desert island. Do you know where the

Sahara Desert, the Gobi Desert and the Kara-Kum Desert are situated? Robinson Crusoe lived for many years on a desert island.

- a **chain** [tʃeɪn] (*n*): a chain of mountains, a gold chain. She always wears a gold chain round her neck. Could you show the main mountain chains on the map of America?
- an **attraction** [ə'trækʃn] (*n*): The Tower of London is a great attraction for tourists. The cinema has little attraction for some people.
- a **skyscraper** ['skaɪskreɪpə] (*n*): a tall skyscraper. New York is a city of skyscrapers. Are there any skyscrapers in Moscow?
- mixture** ['mɪkstʃə] (*n*): a bottle of cough mixture. I listened to his story with a mixture of surprise and admiration.
- to **melt** [melt] (*v*): The sun melted the snow. His heart melted when he saw the crying girl. These chocolates really melt in your mouth.
- a **melting pot:**¹ America has been a melting pot since its beginnings.

11 Match the words with their definitions.

a chain
mighty
a skyscraper
great-grandparents
a melting pot
a mixture
to rise
a desert
grassland

a very high building
different things put together
to begin
a number of connected things
sandy country with little water
and few plants
your grandparents' parents
wild, open land covered mainly
with grass
strong, powerful
a place where there is a mixing of
people of different races ['reisɪz]
and nationalities

¹ a melting pot — 1) тигель, ёмкость для плавки металлов; 2) место, где собираются вместе и живут представители различных рас и национальностей

12 Describe the picture, use the words:

a beach, a sea shore, a mighty river,
a chain of mountains, to melt, a valley,
a tourist attraction



FOCUS

banks of the river

shores { of the lake
of the sea
of the ocean

13 Match the names of areas with the words describing them. Describe one of the areas using the words.

Northern Africa

mighty rivers with high banks; endless tall forests; important waterways; wildlands; open lands stretching for miles and miles

Siberia	high mountains; mighty waterfalls; rocky mountain peaks; deep valleys and green meadows; a lot of deep lakes with high shores; wild deer
the Scottish Highlands	farmlands; flat tulip fields; very few wildlands; a lot of short rivers with low banks; no mountain chains; no deserts; green meadows; corn fields
East Anglia	the Sahara Desert; two mountain ranges; bare ¹ rocky land; dry climate; the world's highest temperatures; no true winter season

14 Use the words from ex. 9, ex. 10 to complete the sentences.

1. Rivers have always been used as important
2. A ... is a long, light, narrow boat, first used by American Indians.
3. — What do children usually do on the ... ? — Oh, they make sandcastles, lie in the sun, swim and play with big bright balls.
4. This tea is ... of three different sorts.
5. Disneyland is a place full of ... both for children and grown-ups.
6. At what temperature does ice ... ?
7. Do you know where the Moskva River ... ?
8. From the deck they could see a beautiful cottage on the ... of the sea.
9. There were some rocks on the eastern ... of the lake.
10. The ... was sandy and we often played there in summer.
11. The eagle flew up to the sky on its ... wings.

FOCUS

Nouns

millions of stars
thousands of people
hundreds of books

Numerals

five million dollars
six thousand cars
three hundred letters

¹ bare [beə] — зđ. пустой, оголённый

1. There were **hundreds** of beautiful flowers in my granny's garden.
I would like you to go to the florist's and buy **three hundred** roses.
2. She had at least **four thousand** pupils.
Thousands of pupils visit Disneyland every year.
3. **Millions** of books are collected in the best libraries of the world.
"I know **five million** answers to your question, Daddy," said the young princess.



15 Express it in English.

- a) Миллионы писем, тысячи вопросов, сотни озёр, миллионы лиц, тысячи улыбок, сотни голосов.
- b) Пятьсот слов, шесть тысяч домов, семь миллионов деревьев, триста мячей, восемьсот игрушек, три миллиона фунтов, двадцать семь тысяч рублей, двести городов.

16 Listen to the song "This Land Is Your Land", **56**, then sing it.

THIS LAND IS YOUR LAND
(words and music by Woody Guthrie)

As I was walking that ribbon¹ of highway²
I saw above me that endless sky-way,
I saw below me that golden valley,
This land was made for you and me.

This land is your land, this land is my land,
From California to the New York island,
From the red-wood forest to the Gulf Stream water;
This land was made for you and me.

¹ a ribbon ['ribən] — лента

² a highway ['haɪwei] — шоссе, большая дорога

17 Learn to read these words,  57.

Alaska [ə'læskə], Hawaii [hə'waii:], Florida ['flɔridə], Yosemite [jəʊ'semɪt̬] Valley, Yellowstone ['jeləʊstən], the Mississippi [,mɪsɪ'sipi], the Missouri [mɪ'zʊəri], the Appalachians [,æpə'lɛtsfɪənz], European [,juərə'pi:ən], China ['tʃainə], Southeast Asia [,səʊθi:st 'eɪʃə], the Caribbean [,kærɪ'bɪ:ən] Sea, the Grand Canyon ['kænjən], the Colorado [,kɒlə'rɑ:dəʊ], the Rocky ['rɒki] Mountains (Rockies).

18 Read the text and say what facts mentioned in it you have never heard before.

COUNTRY AND PEOPLE

(after Terry Tomsha and Teresa Cox)

There are fifty states in the United States of America. Two of these states, Alaska and Hawaii, are not connected to the other states. You can see it on this map. The US is washed by the Pacific Ocean in the west, by the Atlantic Ocean in the east, by the Caribbean Sea and the Gulf of Mexico in the south. In the north are Great Lakes.

The US is a large country with many natural wonders. It goes from the shores of the Atlantic Ocean to the islands of Hawaii in the Pacific, and from cold, snowy northern Alaska to sunny Florida in the southeast. The US has almost every kind of weather. Also, it has many kinds of land — rocky coasts, dry empty deserts, big rivers, wide plains and grasslands, lakes of all sizes, high mountains, great forests, sunny beaches, lands of endless winter.

More than 250 million people live in the US. But the country is very big, so there is still a lot of open space and natural scenery outside the cities. Americans have tried to save many of the most beautiful wild areas of the United States. There are a lot of parks, forests and wildlands where you can enjoy the beauty and power of wild America. The Grand Canyon, Yosemite Valley, and Yellowstone are among the most famous.



58. Many rivers cross the United States. But the greatest is the mighty Mississippi. Native Americans called it "the father of waters". It begins quietly in the north of the country and ends in the Gulf of Mexico, nearly four thousand miles¹ (6400 km) away. On its journey to the sea, the Mississippi travels through several states, and becomes larger and more powerful, it brings water to farmlands. And the Mississippi has been an important waterway since early times, when native Americans travelled on the river in canoes. Among other big rivers are the Colorado and the Missouri. The Colorado River rises in the Rocky Mountains or the Rockies that stretch from Alaska down almost to the south of the country. Another big mountain chain is the Appalachians in the east also running from north to south.

The Grand Canyon is one of America's main tourist attractions. It is so big that you must go there yourself to

¹ a mile [mail] = 1,6 kilometre

feel its true size and beauty. The Colorado River formed the Grand Canyon over millions of years. Slowly, the river cut down through hard rock. Today, the canyon is one mile deep and 200 miles (320 km) long. It's interesting that there are different kinds of plants and animals on opposite sides of the canyon. The south side is dry and desert country. The north side has tall forests. The canyon looks different at different times of day, and in different seasons and weather. At sunrise and sunset the red, gold, brown, and orange colours of the rocks are especially clear and bright. In winter, the canyon is partly covered with snow. You can walk down into the Grand Canyon, or you can go down on the back of a mule.¹ But be careful to carry enough water because inside the canyon, it is very hot — much hotter than at the top.

The United States is a young country. Its written history is only a few hundred years old. It is sometimes, in fact, called the "New World". Over the last four hundred years millions of people have come to start a new life in this "New World".

Americans are not afraid of new ideas. They built the first skyscrapers and they put the first man on the Moon. They like to be modern. They like exciting, modern cities, new houses, and new cars. At the same time, Americans love old things. They like to visit historic houses and museums. They build old pioneer houses and remember the days of the "Wild West". Americans are interested in old traditions, but they are good at making new traditions too.

The people of the United States are a mixture of many different nationalities. Every American schoolchild learns that the United States is a big melting pot of countries. In a melting pot, different metals are melted together to make a new metal. The United States is like a melting pot for people. In the past, people from many different European countries came to the US and made one country out of many. In one city you can find people whose parents, grandparents or great-grandparents came from China, Africa, South America, Southeast Asia, and every European

¹ a mule [mju:l] — мул

country. These different people brought to their new land a wonderful mixture of customs and traditions. The Germans brought Christmas trees. The Irish brought St. Patrick's Day celebrations. The Scots brought Halloween. ☺

19 Now you have learnt some more facts about the USA. Could you answer the questions?

1. Where is the US situated? 2. What is it washed by?
3. What is the typical weather of the country? 4. What is the scenery of the country?
5. What is the population of the country? 6. What are the most famous places to enjoy the beauty and power of wild America?
7. What mighty rivers of the USA do you know?
8. What big mountain chains can you name?
9. What attracts people to the Grand Canyon?
10. Why do people say that the US is a young country?
11. What do the authors of the text say about Americans' likes and interests?
12. How do you understand the phrase "The US is a big melting pot"?

20 Make an outline of the text, compare your outlines and choose the best, put it up on the blackboard and try to remember as much as you can on each point.

LET US TALK

21 Work in pairs. Ask questions on the points below and answer them.

- the number of states in the US
- the waters the US is washed by
- the kinds of land the US has
- the size of the Grand Canyon
- the "New World"
- the days of the "Wild West"
- the number of people living in the US
- the greatest rivers in the US
- the biggest mountain chains in the US
- the big melting pot
- a mixture of customs and traditions

22 Look at the map of the US, find the places mentioned in the text and speak about them.

23 Get ready to speak about the following:

- 1) the US geographical outlook;
- 2) the US scenery and its wild beauty;
- 3) the US as a melting pot.

24 Choose the place in the USA you would like to visit and explain to your group why it attracts you. (If you need some extra information, look it up.)

25 Choose one of the beginnings of ex. 3 and make up a story. Tell your story to the class.

LET US WRITE

26 Do ex. 1, ex. 2, ex. 3, ex. 6, ex. 8, ex. 15 in writing.

27 Write a letter to your friend. Imagine that you have been to a) the Grand Canyon, b) the Mississippi River. Describe one of these places in your letter.

28 Express the same in English, use *past perfect*.

1. К концу августа они заработали много денег. 2. К концу года они разбили вражеский флот. 3. Он напомнил мне об этом событии после того, как Джон уехал. 4. Мы сожгли сухие листья до того, как выпал снег. 5. Радуга появилась на небе после того, как дождь прекратился. 6. Она срезала цветы до того, как мы пришли в теплицу. 7. Додо — вымерший вид птиц. Они исчезли после того, как люди начали на них охотиться. 8. Огонь разрушил здание, прежде чем приехали пожарные. 9. Мисс Марпл разрешила сложную криминальную проблему, прежде чем это смогли сделать полицейские. 10. Маленький Роберт испортил новую игрушку, прежде чем папа объяснил ему, как с ней играть.

29 Look at the words (p. 228) again and get ready to write a spelling quiz on them.



a farmland, grasslands, wildlands, great-grandparents, a canoe, endless, a waterway, mighty, to rise (rose, risen), to stretch, a shore, a beach, a desert, a chain, an attraction, a skyscraper, a mixture, to melt, a melting pot, the Mississippi, the Missouri, the Colorado, the Appalachians, the Rocky Mountains (the Rockies)

LET US LISTEN AND DISCUSS

- 30 Listen to the tape, 59, and say whose words they are:

1. "Is it true that I was born on the shores of Lake Michigan?"
2. "Is it true that Mummy was born in Ireland, in a small village on the coast of the Irish Sea?"
3. "It was a very small village then without any attractions..."
4. "Why are you asking me all these questions?"
5. "When Granny told me all those things while I was with her, I couldn't understand how we had all met..."

- 31 Describe the place where a) Dick's mother was born; b) Dick's great-grandmother had a farm.

UNIT 17

POLITICAL OUTLOOK



LET US REVIEW

- 1 Choose one of the two forms.

1. Our school gets ... (*hundred, hundreds*) of letters every year.

2. Five ... (*hundred, hundreds*) new houses were built in our city last year. 3. You can see ... (*million, millions*) of stars in the night sky. 4. Six ... (*million, millions*) tourists visited Rome last summer. 5. Our library has received four ... (*thousand, thousands*) new books. 6. ... (*thousand, thousands*) of pupils nowadays try to learn two foreign languages.

2 Answer the following questions using the words and word combinations of ex. 9, ex. 10 (Unit 16).

1. What do you call your grandparents' parents?
2. Do lakes have banks or shores? What about rivers?
3. How do Americans describe themselves as a nation?
4. What is the most famous desert in Africa?
5. What buildings are typical of New York centre?
6. At what temperature does ice melt?
7. Where do rivers usually rise?
8. What adjective can you use to describe the Mississippi and the Volga?
9. What is your favourite attraction in Moscow?
10. What mountain chain separates Europe from Asia?

3 Try and form compound words.¹ Use the following:

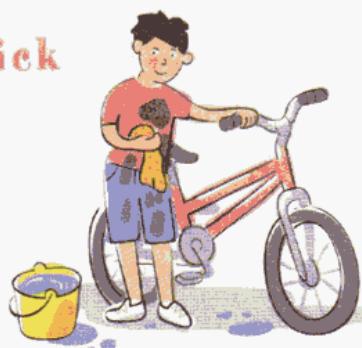
weather	green	scraper	maker	lands	land	sun
maker	farm	shine	sky	house	glove	holiday
storm	rain	man	low	low	wild	

4 Look at the pictures (page 230) and say what Nick and Jane had done by six o'clock on Sunday (the phrases in the word box will help you).

EXAMPLE: Nick had washed his bicycle by six o'clock.

¹ compound words (compounds [kəm'paundz]) — сложные слова, например: bed+room=bedroom

Nick



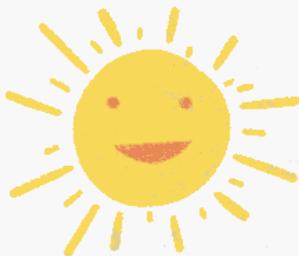
- to wash a bicycle
- to bake a cake
- to do the shopping
- to take the dog for a walk
- to hang a picture
- to rescue a fox
- to watch a film
- to look through the magazine

Jane



- 5** Say: a) what these people had done before noon and b) what had happened by the end of the day. Use the words below.

Before noon



EXAMPLE:

Ann: to write the letter — Ann had written the letter before noon.

Bill: to repair his bicycle
Nelly: to do her homework
Sarah: to dig the garden
Tim: to write a story
Polly: to cook dinner
Sam: to clean his room
the children: to plant twenty trees
Chris: to lie in the sun

By the end of the day



EXAMPLE:

the rain: to stop — The rain had stopped by the end of the day.

the rainbow: to appear
the play: to end
the rain: to begin
the race: to finish
the sky: to clear
the concert: to start
the storm: to stop
the snow: to start

- 6** Report what these people asked or said.

EXAMPLE: Phil: There were many wildlands in America. — Phil said there had been many wildlands in America.
Ann: Did you see any skyscrapers in New York? — Ann asked if I had seen any skyscrapers in New York.

1. *Kitty*: What did you find on the beach?
2. *Oleg*: Where did you see a canoe?
3. *Frank*: How long did they travel in the Sahara Desert?
4. *Alice*: How far did the plain stretch?
5. *Sam*: What do you call the mixture you have prepared?

6. *Nick:* Were there many people on the bank of the river?
7. *Betty:* Have you heard anything of the mighty American rivers?

LET US READ AND LEARN

FOCUS

Reported Speech

Usually

Present Indefinite →
Past Indefinite

1. Mother said: “I want a cup of tea.”
Mother said that she wanted a cup of tea.

2. Sam said: “I am in Moscow for the first time.”
Sam said that he was in Moscow for the first time.

Usually

Past Indefinite →
Past Perfect

1. My friend said: “We met long ago.”
My friend said that they had met long before.
2. Linda said: “My father bought a new car.”
Linda said that her father had bought a new car.

General truth, facts

Present Indefinite →
Present Indefinite

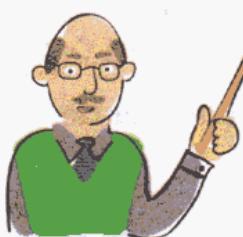
1. The teacher said: “Water boils at 100 degrees Centigrade.”
The teacher said that water boils at 100 degrees Centigrade.
2. Sam said: “Moscow is a beautiful city.”
Sam said that Moscow is a beautiful city.

Exact time in the past

Past Indefinite →
Past Indefinite

1. My friend said: “We met on March 2.”
My friend said that they met on March 2.
2. Linda said: “My father bought a car in 1995.”
Linda said that her father bought a car in 1995.

7 Report what these people said.



"The earth moves round the sun."



The teacher said:



"Nothing can harm a good man."



Socrates ['sɔkrətɪz] said:

"The Brooklyn ['brʊklɪn]
bridge is the most famous
bridge in New York."

The student said:



"The War of Independence began
in 1775 and ended in 1783."



"The Civil War in America began
in 1861 and ended in 1865."

The history teacher explained:



"Alexander Pushkin was born in 1799."

Nick added:

Kate thought:

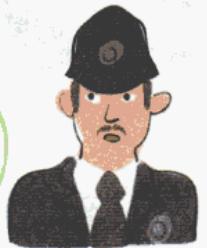


"New York is not an American capital."

Nelly mentioned:



"It never snows in Africa."



"Neil Armstrong, an American astronaut,
stepped on the Moon in 1969."

Tom said:

The officer added:

8 Express the same in English.

1. Анна объяснила, что лёд тает при температуре 0 градусов.
2. Филипп сказал, что приехал в Россию в июле.
3. Анна добавила, что Филипп любит путешествовать.
4. Сюзи знала, что Шекспир родился в 1564 году, и сказала об этом друзьям.
5. Роберт спросил, когда умер Лев Толстой.
6. Учитель рассказал нам, что римляне впервые пришли на Британские острова в первом веке до нашей эры.
7. Джон сказал, что он был в России три раза.
8. Мы все знали, что Колумб открыл Америку в 1492 году.
9. Анна хотела знать, где берет своё начало Волга.
10. Борис сказал, что никогда не бывал в пустыне.

9 a) Read and guess what the underlined words mean.

1. The Constitution [,kɒnsti'tju:ʃn] is the main law of the country.
2. When people elect their government they take part in the election [ɪ'lekʃn].
3. A congress ['kɒŋgrɛs] is a large meeting of people coming from different parts of the country. Congressmen and congresswomen are members of the US Congress.

4. The Senate ['senit] is one of the houses in the US Congress. A senator ['senətə] is a member of the law-making senate.
5. All the newspapers that are published in a country are called the Press [pres].
6. Religion [rɪ'lɪdʒən] is believing in God or gods.
7. A helper is someone who helps.
8. The vice president [,vaɪs 'prezɪdənt] in the US is elected together with the president of the country.
9. The Cabinet ['kæbɪnit] is a group of important ministers who help a president giving him advice on different problems.
10. I am sure everything will be all right, I can guarantee [,gærən'ti:] it.
11. It's often easy to begin a war but difficult to end it.
12. Slavery ['sleɪvəri] is a system by which people (slaves) can be owned by other people.

b) Look these words up to make sure that you have guessed right.

-  Read the words, look them up and study the word combinations and sentences to know how to use them.
- a **representative** [,reprɪ'zentətɪv] (*n*): an important representative, representatives of the country, people's representatives. In the group of tourists there were representatives of many cities.
 - to **represent** [,reprɪ'zent] (*v*): to represent sb at the conference (meeting, competition). Who is going to represent your class at the competition?
 - a **trunk** [trʌŋk] (*n*): 1. the trunk of a tree. I sat down on a fallen tree trunk. A hole in the trunk of a big tree was a good home for the squirrel and her young. 2. an elephant's trunk. With the help of its trunk an elephant takes food and water and puts them to its mouth.
 - a **support** [sə'pɔ:t] (*n*): your friends' support. Will you help me? I need your support.
 - to **support** (*v*): to support sb in sth. Will you support me in the argument? He said he wanted to go to the zoo but nobody supported him.

- to obey** [ə'beɪ] (*v*): to obey the rules, to obey orders. They obeyed me without a question. Do you always obey your parents?
- a term** [tɜ:m] (*n*): 1. a school term, a college term. You are going to have a lot of English classes this term.
2. A term is a period of time between two elections when a certain president or a political party is in power.
- an amendment** [ə'mendmənt] (*n*): an amendment to the Constitution; to make amendments. Changes in the Constitution are called amendments.
- to declare** [dɪ'kleə] (*v*): to declare war on a country, to declare the meeting open, to declare one's loyalty to the country. Germany didn't declare war on Russia in 1941. Jack was declared the winner of the fight. I now declare this meeting open.
- a bill** [bil] (*n*): 1. a hotel bill, a restaurant bill, an electricity bill. The bill for dinner was over twelve dollars. Last month my family got a large telephone bill.
2. a bill of parliament, the Bill of Rights, to pass a bill, to defeat a bill. The American Congress has just passed a new bill on education. The job of any parliament is to study bills and either pass or defeat them.
- a decision** [dɪ'sizn] (*n*): an important decision, the right decision, the wrong decision, to take/make a decision. I think that I made the wrong decision. It isn't always easy to make a decision.
- to vote** [vəʊt] (*v*): to vote for/against something. When you vote, you make your choice or give your opinion by raising your hand or writing on a piece of paper. The people voted "yes" on the referendum [,refə'rendəm].
- a court** [kɔ:t] (*n*): the Supreme Court. Silence in court! Her case¹ will be heard in the court.
- to judge** [dʒʌdʒ] (*v*): to judge a case, to judge a competition, to judge the dogs at a dog show, as far as I can judge, it's difficult to judge, judging by... Who will judge the next case? Judging by what everyone says about him, he will win the race.

¹ a case [keɪs] — случай, судебное дело

a judge (*n*): a court judge, Judge Simpson, a judge at the competitions, a judge of music, a judge of poetry. She is a good judge of character. I'm no judge of music but I know what I like.

a citizen ['sɪtɪzn] (*n*): an American citizen, citizens of Moscow. She is a British citizen but lives in India. When did he become a US citizen?

no matter how (what, where, when, who, why) means that it makes no difference how (what, where, when, who, why). I'll finish the job, no matter how long it takes. I'll go there, no matter what you may say.

all in all means taken together. All in all we spent ten days travelling in Italy.

armed forces are the military forces of the country. What can you say about the British armed forces?

11 Match the words and their definitions.

an amendment

a judge

a trunk

a citizen

a term

a representative

a support

a court

a person who settles questions brought before a court

a change to make a rule (law) better
any of three or four periods of time into
which a school year is divided

a person who lives in this or that city,
state or country

a person who is chosen to act in place
of others

a long round nose of an elephant

a room or building in which law cases
can be heard or judged

an active help to get success

FOCUS

the Bill of Rights

a bill of parliament

a bill on education

a bill for dinner

to pass a bill

to defeat a bill

to declare war on the country

to declare one's loyalty to the country

amendments to

the law
the rule
the order
the Constitution

to fight **for** peace
to vote **for** the law

to fight **against** war
to vote **against** the rule

to judge **in** (the) court
to judge (sb/sth) **at** the competition
judging **by**...



12 Complete the sentences using the prepositions *against, at, by, for, in, on, of, to* where necessary.

1. All together there are twenty-six amendments ... the Constitution of the USA.
2. Judging ... his words he is the best football player in his school.
3. Half of the class voted ... the excursion to the Botanical Gardens but half of the class voted ... it.
4. Every bill ... the British Parliament is discussed both in the House of Commons and in the House of Lords.
5. To pass ... a bill means to vote ... it.
6. Who is going to judge ... the volleyball competition?
7. A new bill ... education was passed in the USA not long ago.
8. Progressive people all over the world fight ... peace ... war.
9. Don't declare your loyalty ... your country but help your country as much as you can.
10. A bill ... the electricity comes every month.

13 Complete the sentences using these verbs: *to support, to declare, to represent, to vote, to judge, to obey*.

1. "I came, I saw, I conquered,"¹ Julius Caesar
2. "Taking a shower in the morning is a very good rule, I'd like you to ... it," father said.
3. My friend Peter is going to ... our school at the English Language Competition.

¹ to conquer ['kɔŋkə] — побеждать, победить

4. We'll all ... for Liza to be President of the English Speaking Club. 5. I think Mary speaks good French, but I don't speak any French myself, so I can't really 6. I'm sure you are right and I promise I'll ... you in the discussion.

- 14 a) Listen to the song "America, the Beautiful" and sing it along, 60.

AMERICA, THE BEAUTIFUL

(music by Samuel Ward,
words by Katherine Lee Bates)

O beautiful for spacious skies, for amber waves of grain,
For purple mountain majesties above the fruited plain.
America! America! God shed this grace on thee,
And crown thy good with brotherhood
From sea to shining sea.

- b) Try your hand at translating and give your version of the song in Russian. Discuss your versions with the teacher and choose the best one. These words and word combinations can help you.

spacious — просторный, бескрайний, огромный

amber — янтарный

grain — зд. пшеница

majesty — величие, величественность

fruited — плодородный

to shed (shed, shed) — проливать, осыпать

thee = you, thy = your

to crown — венчать, увенчивать, вознаграждать, завершать

grace — милость

LET US READ

- 15 Learn to read these proper names, 61.

The Civil War [ðə ,sɪvl 'wɔ:], the US Capitol [ðə 'ju: 'es 'kæpitl], the US Constitution [ðə 'ju: 'es ,kɒnstɪ'tju:ʃn], the Revolutionary War [ðə ,revə'lu:ʃnərɪ 'wɔ:], the War of Independence [ðə 'wɔ: və ,ɪndɪ'pendəns], the House of Representatives [ðə ,haʊs və ,reprɪ'zentətɪvz], the Commander in Chief

[ðə kə'ma:ndər in 'tʃi:f], the US Congress [ðə 'ju: 'es 'kɔŋgres], the Supreme Court [ðə su,pri:m 'kɔ:t], the US Senate [ðə 'ju: 'es 'senit].

- 16 Read the text to get some new information about the USA and say what the three main parts of the American government are.

WHO RULES THE COUNTRY?

As you know the colonies in America won the Revolutionary War (the War of Independence (1775—1783). After that they became free and independent states, but they had a problem: they needed one strong national government. That's why in the year 1787 all the states sent their representatives to Philadelphia where they wrote the Constitution. The Constitution is the highest law in the United States which describes the powers of the national government and the powers of the state governments.

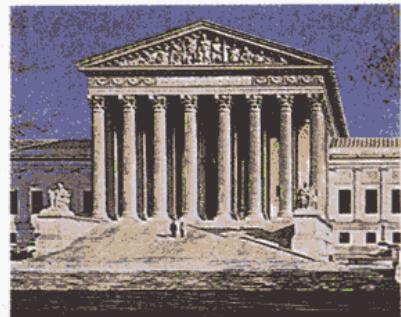
62. The US government is like a tree with a strong trunk and three branches. The trunk is the people. It holds up

the tree: without the support of the people there can be no government. People choose the men who make American laws.

The first branch on the tree of government is the Congress. The Congress is a meeting of representatives from all states. The people elect those representatives. The Congress makes the laws that everybody must obey. The Congress meets in the US Capitol in Washington, D. C. The Congress is divided into two parts, the Senate and the House of Representatives. Every state, no matter how large or small, sends two people to the Senate. These people are called senators. There are one hundred senators in the Senate. A senator's term is six years. Each state also sends



people to the House of Representatives. They are called congressmen or congresswomen. The number of congressmen from each state depends on the number of people who live in the state. The larger states have more congressmen than the smaller states. All in all there are 435 congressmen in the House of Representatives. A representative's term is two years. The Constitution gives many powers to the Congress. One important power of the Congress is the power to declare war.



The second branch of government is the President and his helpers. They carry out the laws that the Congress makes. The President signs bills and then they become law. The Vice President and members of the Cabinet help the President to make decisions. The US President is Commander in Chief¹ of the country's armed forces. A person who wants to become President must be born in the United States, must be at least 35 years old and must live in the United States for at least 14 years before becoming President. The President's term is four years and one can be President for one or two terms, but not longer. Americans vote for the President in November of every leap year.²

The third branch of government is the Supreme Court. It is made up of nine judges — the most important judges in the land. They have to make sure that the President and the Congress follow the Constitution. They decide what the Constitution and the laws passed by the Congress mean when there is an argument about their meaning. The judges work in the Supreme Court as long as they live. ☐

Americans are very proud of their Constitution. It was written more than 200 years ago and it is still working! But the people of the United States can change the Constitution. Changes in the Constitution are called amendments. There are 26 amendments to the Constitution. The

¹ commander in chief [kə'ma:ndər in 'tʃi:f] — главнокомандующий

² a leap [li:p] year — високосный год

first ten amendments are called the Bill of Rights. They were made in 1791. The Bill of Rights guarantees to people of the USA such important rights and freedoms as freedom of press, freedom of religion, the right to go to court, have a lawyer, and some others. Soon after the Civil War (1861–1865) there were three important amendments. The 13th amendment ended slavery, the 14th amendment made



all black people citizens of the United States, the 15th amendment gave blacks the right to vote (long ago, only white men who were over 21 years of age and owned property¹ could vote in the United States). In 1920, the 19th amendment gave women the right to vote. In 1971, the 26th amendment gave people 18 years old and older the right to vote.

- 17 Make up an outline of the text and say how much you remember on each of the items.

LET US TALK

- 18 Now you have learnt some more facts about the political system of the USA. Could you answer these questions?

1. When did the War of Independence begin? 2. On what country did the colonies in America declare a war? 3. What country won the Revolutionary War? When was it? 4. What problem did the young country face after the war? 5. Where was the US Constitution written? Who wrote it? 6. Why can the US government be compared with a tree? 7. What is the US Congress? How is it divided? 8. How many people does each state send to the Senate? Does the number of senators depend on the size of the state? 9. Do all states send people to the House of Representatives? What does

¹ property ['prəpətri] — собственность

the number of people depend on? 10. Who carries out the laws that the Congress makes? 11. Who helps the President to make decisions? 12. When do Americans vote for the President? 13. What do you call the third branch of the US government? 14. How many judges does the Supreme Court consist of? 15. How long do the judges work in the Supreme Court? 16. The US Constitution can be changed, can't it? 17. What do you call changes to the Constitution? 18. How many amendments to the Constitution can you name?

 Choose one of the items below and speak on it using the given outlines.

1. The US Constitution:

- what the word “constitution” means;
- why countries need a constitution;
- how old the US Constitution is;
- why Americans needed a constitution after the Revolutionary War;
- where it was written;
- what the government of the United States can be compared with.

2. The US Congress:

- what the word “congress” means;
- what the Congress does;
- where it meets;
- what its two parts are;
- what you know about the Senate and senators;
- what you know about the House of Representatives and congressmen.

3. The US President and his helpers:

- what the President does;
- who helps the President;
- who can become President;
- how long one can be President;
- when people vote for their President.

4. The Supreme Court:

- what the Supreme Court does;
- how many judges there are in the court;
- how long the judges work in the court.

5. Amendments to the US Constitution:

- why amendments are made;
- how many amendments there are;
- what the first ten amendments are called and what they are about;
- what you remember about the 13th and 14th amendments;
- which amendments gave the right to vote and to whom.

LET US WRITE

20 Do ex. 3, ex. 4, ex. 5, ex. 6, ex. 7, ex. 8 in writing.

21 Complete these sentences.

1. The US Constitution was written 2. ... is Commander in Chief. 3. The judges work in the Supreme Court
4. The President's term is 5. There are ... amendments to the US Constitution. 6. The Bill of Rights guarantees to people of the USA such important rights as
7. ... , the 26th amendment 8. The second branch of government 9. The Congress is 10. The Congress meets 11. There are ... senators in the Senate. 12. The number of congressmen from each state depends on
13. ... declare war. 14. The President ... and then they become laws.

22 Look at the words again and get ready to write a spelling quiz on them.



a constitution, an election, congress, a congressman, a senate, a senator, the press, religion, a helper, a vice president, Cabinet, guarantee, an end, slavery, a representative, a trunk, to support, to obey, a term, an amendment, to declare, a bill, a decision, to vote, a court, a judge, a citizen, no matter how, all in all, armed forces

LET US LISTEN AND DISCUSS

23 a) Make sure you know these expressions:

the airport clerk [kla:k] — служащий аэропорта

VIP [,vi:ai'pi:] = a very important person

b) Listen to the tape, 63, say which of these sentences are not true and correct them.

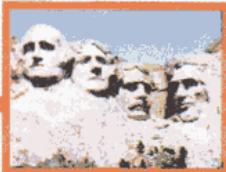
1. It was always difficult to travel by plane.
2. Many seats on planes are needed for government representatives and army people.
3. Mr Brown was not a very important person.
4. Mr Brown wanted to go to Edinburgh to listen to some important lecture.
5. A very important army officer had to fly to Edinburgh on the same day.
6. Mr Brown had to give his seat to the officer.
7. Mr Brown was given another seat on the plane.
8. The important officer arrived in Edinburgh to give a lecture.
9. Mr Brown was late for the lecture.

24 Answer these questions.

1. Why was it difficult to travel by plane during the Second World War?
2. What was Mr Brown's job during the war?
3. Why did very few people know how important Mr Brown was?
4. Where did Mr Brown have to fly one day?
5. What for did he have to fly to Edinburgh?
6. Why couldn't Mr Brown fly to Edinburgh?
7. Why couldn't the important army officer listen to the lecture when he arrived in Edinburgh?

25 Tell the story "A Very Important Person" to your friends who haven't heard it.

UNIT 18 AMERICAN PRESIDENTS



LET US REVIEW

- 1 Remember at least five things about the US political system. Compare them with what the other students have remembered.

EXAMPLE: The US Congress makes up laws.

- 2 Complete the sentences using the words and word combinations from the box.

no matter, all in all, election, leap year, decision, Press, religions, representative, trunk, judge (2), amendments, support, citizen

1. Thirty days has September, April, June and November, all the rest have thirty-one. February has twenty-eight alone, but for the That's the time when February has twenty-nine.
2. I want all the ... I can get, I really need help.
3. He has been a British ... for all his life.
4. There are 12 girls and 14 boys in our class: twenty-six pupils
5. — What's your ... ? — I haven't decided anything yet, I'm afraid.
6. Are there any ... to this law?
7. ... how much time it is going to take we still have to do this job.
8. They say that the Queen is a good ... of horses.
9. The court consists of a number of
10. What has a ... , though it is not a tree?
11. America is often described as a melting pot and people of different ... live there side by side.
12. The head teacher couldn't be present himself, but he sent his ... to the meeting.
13. It's difficult to imagine modern life without the ... : newspapers, magazines and journals.
14. At a general ... , the people of Britain vote to choose which party will form the government.

3 The year 1980 was a leap year. Say which of these years were also leap years.

1970, 1976, 1982, 1984, 1989, 1992, 1994, 1996.

4 Open the brackets and use the correct form.

1. My friend was sure that Ferdinand Magellan ['fɜ:dɪnənd mæ'gelən] (*discovered, had discovered*) Australia. But I told him he (*is, was*) wrong. 2. Our history teacher explained to us that the Revolutionary War in America (*took, had taken*) place in the 18th century. 3. Betty knew that she (*did, had done*) everything she could to win the competition. 4. We asked Professor Smith when he (*came, had come*) to Moscow how many places of interest he already (*saw, had seen*). 5. Little John believed that Canada (*is, was*) in the South of the American Continent. 6. We all wanted to know where in New York the Statue of Liberty (*is, was*) situated. 7. The children asked what cities in the USA we (*saw, had seen*). 8. Father told me that I (*made, had made*) a mistake in my school test. 9. We all knew that Germany (*declared, had declared*) war on several European countries in 1941. 10. He said he always (*supported, had supported*) me. 11. Not all the pupils knew that the US President (*is, was*) the Commander in Chief of the country's armed forces.

FOCUS

Past Simple

1. I met him yesterday.
2. Mr White **came up** to the cottage, **opened** the door and **looked into** the room.
3. We **used to travel** a lot when we were young.

Past Continuous

1. I **was meeting** him at 3 o'clock yesterday.
2. While I **was cooking**, she **was vacuuming** the rooms.
3. When he came in, I **was painting** the door.

Past Perfect

1. I said I **had met** him the day before.
2. Our boss **had signed** all the papers by four o'clock.
3. The meeting **had begun** before Mr Brown came.



5 Choose the right item.

1. When we got up the sun
a) already rose b) had already risen c) has already risen
2. Many years ago people
a) wore funny clothes b) wear funny clothes c) had worn funny clothes
3. I ... home very early yesterday afternoon.
a) had come b) was coming c) came
4. When we entered the hall the music ... loudly.
a) was playing b) played c) had played
5. While my friend ... I was watching the birds.
a) fished b) had fished c) was fishing
6. He said I ... up the story myself.
a) made b) make c) had made
7. My elder brother ... school 3 years ago.
a) finishes b) finished c) had finished
8. Before mother called us she ... the table.
a) set b) was setting c) had set

6 Complete the sentences opening the brackets.

1. When the bell rang the children (*to run*) into the classroom and (*to take*) their seats. 2. When I opened the door, the lesson (*to begin*) and the teacher (*to explain*) something to the class. 3. Before we (*to take*) the boy to the theatre he (*never to see*) a play. 4. I (*to clean*) the carpet when the dog (*to come*) and (*to shake*) himself. 5. By the time we (*to arrive*) the party (*to finish*). 6. — What you (*to do*) when I (*to call*) you? — I (*to cook*). 7. When I (*to get*) to the playground my friend already (*to leave*) so I (*not to see*) him that day. 8. We (*to have*) a good long holiday after we (*to do*) all the work.

*Phrasal Verb***to take**

- 1. to take after** — быть похожим на кого-либо из старших родственников, если речь идёт о характере и манерах

Everybody says that I **take after** my father, but my little brother Paul **takes after** our mother.

- 2. to take away** — убрать, унести (прочь), увести (прочь)

If you are not going to eat the cake, **take it away**.

Could you **take** the children **away**: I don't think they should see this film.

- 3. to take off** — а) снимать, убирать; б) взлетать (*о самолете, вертолете*)

Take your coat and hat **off**, it's quite warm in here.
Let's **take** the curtains **off** and wash them.

When is the time for the aeroplane **to take off**?

- 4. to take back** — отнести на место, вернуть

Don't forget **to take** the books **back** to the library.

We made the girl **take** the dog **back** to its master.

- 5. to take down** — а) снимать; б) записывать (*под диктовку*)

I hate this picture on the wall up there and I want **to take it down**.

Would you like **to take** my telephone number **down**?

7 Complete the sentences using the missing words.

- He came home, took ... his shoes and changed his clothes.
- Can I ask you to **take** this bicycle ... to Peter? 3. I was surprised to see how much the boy took ... his father.
- We've got to **take** ... all the portraits in the classroom

and dust them. 5. I don't need the magazines anymore, you can take them 6. Look, the plane is going to take 7. What are all these books doing here? Why don't you take them ... to the bookcase? 8. There are a few words that I want you to take 9. The king ordered them to take the boy ... and punish him.

8 Express the same in English.

1. Можно мне снять свитер? На улице очень тепло.
2. Как только самолёт взлетел, у меня ужасно разболелась голова.
3. Я хочу, чтобы ты записал мой новый адрес.
4. Все дети похожи на своего отца, все они весёлые и работящие.
5. Пожалуйста, отнеси эту книгу соседке, это её книга.
6. Эта карта на стене очень старая. Давай снимем её.
7. Убери отсюда свои игрушки, пожалуйста.

FOCUS

Enough

enough+N
enough money
enough time
enough water
enough books

Adj/Adv/V+enough
warm *enough*
good *enough*
well *enough*
to earn *enough*

9 Express the same in a different way.

EXAMPLE: He has a lot of money. He can buy a car. →
He has enough money to buy a car.

1. I like a lot of sugar in my tea. There's very little sugar in this cup of tea.
2. He had to do three exercises, but as it was time to go to bed he did only two.
3. The gardener wanted to plant five trees. He had only three trees.
4. You eat very little. You should eat more.
5. This house is very big and all the family have their own rooms.
6. The boy is not very strong. He can't carry this box, it's too heavy.
7. She knows English rather well and can translate this difficult article.

10 Complete the sentences, make them true.

1. Yesterday I didn't have enough time . . .
2. My room is not big enough to . . .
3. We didn't have enough chairs when . . .
4. I'm old enough to . . .
5. I have enough money to . . .
6. Last Sunday I was lazy enough to . . .
7. In this classroom we have/don't have enough . . .

11 Express the same in English.

Достаточно холодно; достаточно хорошо; достаточно хороший; достаточно мела; достаточно зарабатывать; достаточно чисто; достаточно еды; достаточно трудиться.

12 a) Read and guess what the underlined words mean.

1. "Good evening, ladies ['leɪdɪz] and gentlemen ['dʒentlmən]. I am very glad you've all come here!"
2. He is an honest man. I admire his honesty ['ɒnɪstɪ].
3. In the USA a militia [mɪ'lɪʃə] is like an army but its members are not professional soldiers.
4. My granny always tells me stories before I go to bed. She is a good storyteller ['stɔ:rɪ,telə].
5. He got his education in Oxford. He is a very educated man.
6. A major ['meɪdʒə] is an officer of middle rank in the army.
7. A faraway [,fə:rə'wei] place is one that is far from you. If you live in Russia, America is a faraway country.
8. When people learn to ride a horse, they spend much time on horseback ['hɔ:sba:k].
9. Will you have a chance [tʃa:n:s] to visit London?

b) Look these words up to make sure you have guessed right.

13 Read the words, look them up and then study the word combinations and sentences to know how to use them.

private ['praɪvɪt] (*adj*): a private room, a private shower, a private garden, a private interview, a private discussion,

private thoughts, private plans. Something that is private is for one person only or for a small group of people. I have always wanted to have a private room.

to shoot [ʃu:t], shot, shot (*v*): to shoot well, to shoot badly, to shoot at something. The men were ready to shoot. He shot at the bird but missed.

to shoot an arrow:¹ I shot an arrow into the air.

to measure ['meʒə] (*v*): to measure land, to measure length and width, to measure the room. To measure means to find the size, length and width of things and people. You can measure the length of the box with a ruler. The dressmaker measured lady Ascott.

a measure (*n*): The metre is a measure of length.

to trust [trʌst] (*v*): to trust a person, to trust one's words, to trust one's advice. Everybody liked and trusted him. She didn't trust anybody to look after her child. Do you really trust his advice?

to respect [rɪ'spekt] (*v*): to respect people, to respect one's feelings, to respect one's courage, to respect traditions. If you respect someone you think well of him and his ideas. Do you respect such people, such politicians?

respect (*n*): "I had a real respect and admiration for him," she said. Why do you never show any respect for the lady?

wisdom ['wɪzdəm] (*n*): to show a lot of wisdom, a man of wisdom, to speak with wisdom. At least she had the wisdom to keep silent.

an event [i'vent] (*n*): an important event, a possible event, political and cultural events. An event is something that happens. You can't control the events, can you?

shy [ʃai] (*adj*): a shy girl, a shy smile, a shy look. I've always been a bit shy in the company of people. I don't know why she was so shy at the party and didn't speak to anyone.

to retire [rɪ'taɪə] (*v*): to retire from the company, to retire from farming, to retire at the age of 60. When someone retires he stops doing his job. When did your granddad retire?

¹ an arrow ['ærəʊ] — стрела

a crowd [kraʊd] (*n*): a big/large crowd, a silent crowd. The court case attracted large crowds. Did she say there are always crowds of holidaymakers on these beaches?

to push [puʃ] (*v*): to push a door, to push a person, to push a car. John pushed the door to open it. Why did little Sam have to push his bicycle?

poverty ['pɒvətɪ] (*n*): to live in poverty, to suffer from poverty. There are thousands of people who live in poverty. Did she say she had suffered much from poverty?

a stepmother ['step,mʌðə] (*n*): A stepmother is the woman who has married your father after your mother died. Did Cinderella's stepmother look after the girl?

a stepfather, a stepchild, a stepdaughter, a stepson, a stepbrother, a stepsister

to encourage [ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ] (*v*): to encourage pupils, to encourage the group, to encourage sick children. If you encourage someone you tell him that what he is doing is good and ask him to continue doing it. Does Miss Brown always encourage her pupils to work hard?

to borrow ['bɒrəʊ] (*v*): to borrow a book from the library, to borrow one's car, to borrow one's bicycle, to borrow words from other languages.

1. *To borrow* means to ask for something that belongs to another person and promise that you will give it back. Could I borrow your car for tomorrow?

2. to borrow words, to borrow ideas. English has borrowed a lot of words from other languages.



a) Nick has 7 friends. Say why he respects them.

EXAMPLE:

Bob / to look after his little cousins — Nick respects Bob because he looks after his little cousins.

Kitty and Jack / to be friendly and kind — Nick respects Kitty and Jack because they are always friendly and kind.

1. Philip / to be brave



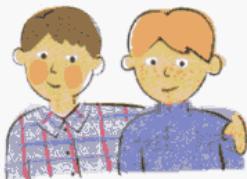
2. Sue / to do everything herself



3. Ann and Polly / to read a lot
and to know much



4. Andy and Alan / to be honest



5. Peter / to help birds and animals

b) Do you have friends you respect? Say why you respect them.

15 Say:

- 1) what people usually borrow;
- 2) how teachers and parents encourage small children;
- 3) what can be private;
- 4) why your holiday often depends on hotel and bus (train) service;
- 5) where you can usually see crowds of people in summer and in other seasons;
- 6) when people usually retire from work;
- 7) what were the most important political events in our country last year;
- 8) how people can show their wisdom;
- 9) which characters of your favourite books spent their childhood in poverty;
- 10) what people usually do to open a door.

16 Say a few words about the chances you had to do something you wanted to do but didn't use them. Explain why.

EXAMPLE: Last week I had a chance to see "Hamlet", but didn't (use it) as I had no time (was busy, didn't have the money, couldn't buy the tickets, etc.).

17 Look at the words and say which of these can be shy, can't be shy, are hardly ever shy.

EXAMPLE: Generals are hardly ever shy.

girls	a look	kings	queens
boys	a book	animals	poets
flowers	a chance	generals	a smile

18 Mr Brown's wife died last year. He has a son called Don and a daughter called Alice. In January Mr Brown married Mary. She also has a son John and a daughter called Sara. What is their relationship?

EXAMPLE: John and Sara are Mr Brown's stepchildren.



Mr Brown



Mary



Don



Alice



John



Sara

1. Mr Brown ... John's
2. Sara ... Mr Brown's
3. Don ... Mary's
4. Mary ... Alice's
5. Mr Brown ... Sara's
6. Alice ... Mary's

- 19** Listen to the poem “The Arrow and the Song”,  64, and read it. Then learn it by heart.

THE ARROW AND THE SONG

(by H. W. Longfellow)

I shot an arrow into the air,
It fell to earth, I knew not where;
For so swiftly¹ it flew, the sight²
Could not follow it in its flight.
I breathed a song into the air,
It fell to earth, I knew not where;
For who has sight so keen³ and strong,
That it can follow the flight of a song?
Long, long afterward,⁴ in an oak⁵
I found the arrow still unbroke;
And the song from beginning to end,
I found again in the heart of a friend.



LET US READ

- 20** Learn to read these words,  65.

Virginia [və'dʒɪnɪə],
Philadelphia [filə'delfiə],
Mount Vernon [,maʊnt 'vɜ:nən],
New York City [,nju: 'jɔ:k 'siti],
Kentucky [ken'tʌki],
Indiana [,indɪ'ænə],
Aesop's Fables ['i:səps 'feiblz],
Robinson Crusoe ['rɒbɪnsən 'kru:səʊ],
Ford's Theatre ['fɔ:dz 'θɪətə],
George Washington ['dʒɔ:g 'wɒʃɪŋtən],
Abraham Lincoln ['eɪbrəhæm 'lɪŋkəln], Abe [eɪb].

¹ swiftly ['swiftlɪ] — быстро

² sight [saɪt] — зрение, взгляд

³ keen [ki:n] — острый

⁴ afterward ['a:ftəwəd] — потом, позже

⁵ an oak [əʊk] — дуб

- 21** Read the text and say why of all the American presidents (and there are more than 40 presidents in American history) George Washington and Abraham Lincoln are especially remembered.

TWO AMERICAN PRESIDENTS

The first US President known to all Americans as “The Father of the Nation” was George Washington. George was born in Virginia into a planter's¹ family. When the boy was eleven his father died. The family had a lot of land but not enough money to send George to school in England as rich families used to do at that time. The boy went to a private school and, later, two private teachers taught him to be a soldier and a Virginia gentleman. George learned to ride a horse, to hunt, shoot, sail and swim. Because he was good at arithmetic, he also learned to measure land. The young man went to faraway parts of the country to measure land for those who built their houses there. He spent hours on horseback in all kinds of weather. He learned to sleep out, cook his own meals, and work hard every day. Everyone liked and trusted young George.

George Washington began his career² in the service of his country as a major in the Virginia militia and later became Commander in Chief of the Colonial Army during the Revolutionary War. He was among those who wrote the US Constitution in Philadelphia. People respected him for his courage, honesty and wisdom.

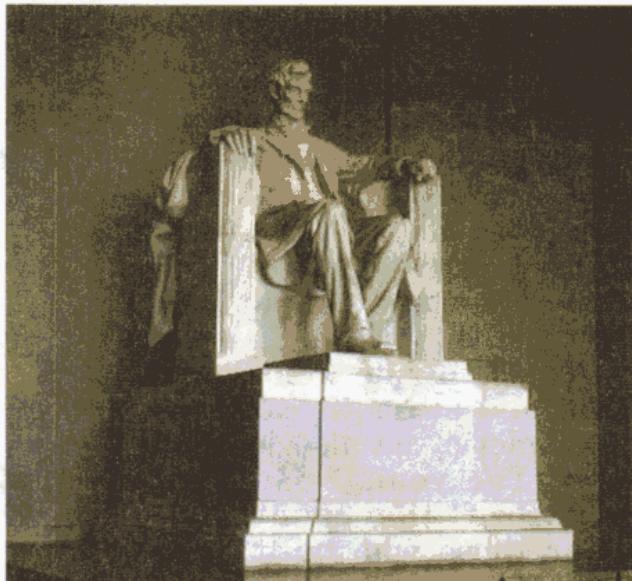
After the Revolutionary War Washington wanted to retire and live at Mount Vernon where he had a beautiful house and a big plantation. But he knew that his duty was to serve his country. He hurried off to New York City which was the capital then. On April 30, 1789, before a



¹ a planter ['pla:ntə] = a plantation owner

² a career [kə'ri:ə] — карьера

large crowd Washington promised to “preserve,¹ protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States”. This is how George Washington became the first President of the country and served two terms. He refused a third term and in 1797 he retired to Mount Vernon where he died two years later.



66. Abraham Lincoln was the 16th President of the USA. Like George Washington, he takes a special place in the list of American presidents.

Abe grew up in the Middle West. His first home was a small, one-room house in the woods. His family were pioneers who helped to fight Indians and push the borders of the United States farther west. The family lived in poverty. His parents moved from Kentucky to Indiana when Abe was 7, and this was his home for 14 years. Thomas Lincoln, Abe's father, hoped to make a better living² there. Soon the mother died. Abe and his sister were lonely until their father married again. Abe's stepmother encouraged the boy to study. Although he had little chance to go to school, he liked to read. He taught himself by reading the books he

¹ to preserve [pri'zɜ:v] — сохранять

² to make a better living — начать жить лучше

could get, such as the Bible, Aesop's "Fables" and "Robinson Crusoe". He often walked miles to borrow a book.

Abe grew fast. He learned to do the hard work of the pioneer, such as cut trees, and take care of the crops.¹ He usually won in tests of strength with other boys. Everyone liked him and everyone said he was a born storyteller. But no one could say that this shy young man with a quiet voice would become one of the greatest American presidents.

When Abe Lincoln was twenty-one, the family moved to Illinois [ili'nɔɪ]. From then on,² Abe called Illinois his home. For a while he worked in a store. Later he joined the militia and fought in an Indian War. After the war he walked home with an educated young lawyer. This new friend gave Abe advice to study law.

Abraham Lincoln became a lawyer and a politician. Many people brought their problems to him. They began to call him "honest Abe" and trusted him to do what was right and honest. He was also an excellent speaker. He was elected to the House of Representatives in US Congress. In 1861 he became the 16th American President. In the same year the Civil War began, so Lincoln had to lead the country through the four terrible years of war. He wanted the northern and southern states to stay together and he hated slavery. In 1863 he signed the Emancipation Proclamation³ — the document that made all the slaves free. This was a great event in the history of the United States. In 1865 the North won the Civil War. Five days after the war ended, President Lincoln was shot in Ford's Theatre, Washington. ☺

22 Answer the questions on the text.

1. Where was George Washington born? 2. What things did he learn to do when he was a boy? 3. What did George Washington do during the Revolutionary War? 4. Why did

¹ crops = harvest

² from then on — с того времени

³ Emancipation Proclamation [ɪ,mænsi'peɪsn ,prəkla'meɪsn] — закон об отмене рабства в США

people respect him? 5. What did Washington want to do after the Revolutionary War? 6. When did George Washington become the first president of the country? 7. In what kind of family was Abraham Lincoln born? 8. How did little Abe teach himself? 9. Why did people like young Abe Lincoln? 10. Who gave Lincoln an idea to become a lawyer? 11. What was happening in the country at the time when Lincoln was President? 12. What great event in the US history happened in 1865?

23 Consult the text (ex. 21) and complete the information about the two American presidents.

George Washington

- was the ... American president
- was born into a ... family
- ... teachers
- when a young man he learned to ...
- took part in the ... War
- he was a professional ...
- people had a lot of respect for him because ...
- people remember him because ...

Abraham Lincoln

- was the ... American president
- was born into a ... family
- ... no teachers
- when a young man he learned to ...
- took part in the ... War
- he was a professional ...
- people had a lot of respect for him because ...
- people remember him because ...

24 Compare the two presidents and say which of the two:

- 1) was born into a rich family
- 2) went to school
- 3) enjoyed reading
- 4) took part in the Revolutionary War
- 5) became a lawyer
- 6) was shy
- 7) wrote the US Constitution

- 8) was called the father of the nation
- 9) made the slaves free
- 10) died in his home
- 11) was president during a war
- 12) grew up in the Middle West

LET US TALK

- 25 Work in pairs. Ask each other questions to get more information about
a) George Washington; b) Abraham Lincoln. One of you should use the tables
below and the other the tables in ex. 30.

a) George Washington

Born	February 22, 1732
Birthplace	?
Parents	Augustine [ɔ:gʌstɪn] and Mary Ball Washington
Occupations	?
Married	Martha Custies ['kastɪs], 1759
Children	?
Age when he became President	57
Died	?

b) Abraham Lincoln

Born	?
Birthplace	near Hodgenville ['hɒdʒənvɪl]
Parents	?
Occupations	lawyer
Married	?
Children	four sons

Age when he became President	?
Died	April 15, 1865, age 56

- 26 Say all you can about a) George Washington; b) Abraham Lincoln.
- 27 What other US presidents do you know? What do you know about them?
- 28 a) Match the portraits of American presidents with their names and the information about them.
b) Imagine that someone asked you to tell him about one of these presidents. Tell him all you can.



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.

- a) Bill Clinton b) John F. Kennedy c) Abraham Lincoln
d) Thomas Jefferson e) George Washington f) Franklin D. Roosevelt

A

Born: February 12, 1809.
Died: April 15, 1865.
Occupation: lawyer.
Important event in his term: Civil War.
Interesting fact: the tallest president (6,4 feet = 1,95 metres).
The **16th** American president.

B

Born: May 29, 1917.
Died: November 22, 1963.
Occupation: politician, writer.
Important event in his term: Cuban Crisis ['kju:bən 'kraɪsɪs].
Interesting fact: got a prestigious [pre'stɪdʒəs] prize for newspaper writing; was the youngest person ever elected president.
The **35th** American president.

C

Born: April 13, 1743.
Died: July 4, 1826.
Occupation: lawyer, inventor.
Important event in his term: Louisiana Area was bought from France.
Interesting fact: had a nickname "Red Fox" (can you guess why?).
The **3rd** American president.

D

Born: February 22, 1732.
Died: December 14, 1799.
Occupation: planter, soldier.
Important event in his term: Bill of Rights was written.
Interesting fact: the only president who didn't live in the White House.
The **1st** American president.

E

Born: August, 1946.
Died:

F

Born: January 30, 1882.
Died: April 12, 1945.

Occupation: university lecturer, lawyer, governor.¹

Important event in his term: a terrorist air attack at the World Trade Centre in New York (September, 2001).

Interesting fact: didn't want to serve in the Vietnam War; can play the saxophone ['sæksəfəvn].

The **42nd** American president.

Occupation: lawyer.

Important event in his term: World War II.

Interesting fact: the only president who served 3 terms.

The **32nd** American president.

29 Say if you know the name of the Russian President. Who was the first Soviet President and when? When did Boris Yeltsin become President of Russia? Who is President of Russia now?

30 See ex. 25.

a) George Washington

Born	?
Birthplace	Bridges Creek, Virginia
Parents	?
Occupations	land measurer, soldier, planter
Married	?
Children	Martha's two children by her first marriage, no children of his own

¹ governor ['gʌvənər] — губернатор

Age when he became President	?
Died	December 14, 1799, age 67

b) Abraham Lincoln

Born	February 12, 1809
Birthplace	?
Parents	Thomas ['tɒməs] and Nancy Hanks Lincoln
Occupations	?
Married	Mary Todd, 1842
Children	?
Age when he became President	52
Died	?

LET US WRITE

31 Do ex. 6, ex. 8, ex. 9, ex. 10 in writing.

32 Express the same in English.

- Пётр сказал, что никогда не уважал таких людей.
- Нелли спросила, когда мой дедушка пойдёт на пенсию.
- Джон хотел знать, робкая ли у меня сестра.
- Боб сказал мне, что никогда прежде не жил в бедно-

сти. 5. Дети сказали отцу, что они доверяют своему новому другу. 6. Дэн попросил меня подтолкнуть велосипед. 7. Она сказала, что всегда пытается приободрить своих учеников. 8. Анна добавила, что проработала в гостиничной службе восемь лет. 9. Ты помнишь, что я просил тебя не стрелять? 10. Она сказала, что не воспользовалась этой возможностью (этим шансом).

33 Look at the words again and get ready to write a spelling quiz on them.



a lady, a gentleman, honesty, militia, a storyteller, educated, major, faraway, horseback, a chance, private, to shoot (shot, shot), to measure, trust, a service, a respect, wisdom, an event, shy, to retire, a crowd, to push, poverty, a stepmother, to encourage, to borrow

LET US LISTEN AND DISCUSS

34 a) Make sure you know these:

to do sightseeing ['saɪt,si:nɪŋ] — осматривать достопримечательности

greedy ['gri:dɪ] — жадный, скупой

b) Listen to the tape, 67, and say which of these sentences are not true and correct them.

1. Henry was an officer in the US Army.
2. Henry went to London to get educated.
3. In London Henry went to visit his friend who was a doctor.
4. Dr Martin Smith was a very good doctor.
5. Dr Smith's patients paid him fifty pounds for their first visit.
6. Henry decided to save five pounds.
7. The doctor explained to Henry that he had to take five different medicines.

35 Listen to the story again and answer the questions.

1. What was Henry's occupation?
2. How well did Henry shoot?
3. Where did Henry decide to go once?
4. How did he feel in London?
5. What did Henry ask the clerk at the hotel?
6. Why did the clerk recommend Henry Dr Martin Smith?
7. How much did the patients pay for their visits when they came to Dr Smith?
8. Why did Henry say he had already visited Dr Smith?
9. What did the doctor tell Henry to do?
10. Do you think the doctor's advice will help Henry to recover?

36 Tell the story "How He Saved 5 Pounds" to your friends.

UNIT 19 CONSOLIDATION THREE

LET US TALK

1 Say what you remember about:

- a) • geography of Scotland
 - its capital
 - the Edinburgh festival
- b) • geography of Wales
 - the languages spoken in Wales
 - its capital
- c) • US scenery
 - US rivers and mountains
 - the big melting pot
 - the Revolutionary War
 - the US Constitution
 - some of the American presidents

2 a) Imagine that you are going to meet a US Congressman. Prepare 8–10 questions that you would like to ask him about his country.
b) Work in pairs. Act out the dialogue with the US Congressman for whom you have prepared your questions.

3 How well do you know Scotland? Give names to the sights in pictures on p. 268.



1.



2.



3.



4.

4 Give five reasons why you would like to go to Wales.

5 Work in pairs and complete the dialogue, then act it out.

Ludmila: Hi, Dmitry! Where have you been? I haven't seen you for ages.

Dmitry: ..., and then

Ludmila: To the United States? Great! Some people are luckier than others. Did you like it there?

Dmitry: Yes, it was wonderful. Our group visited several big cities in the US.

Ludmila: ... ? Which of them did you like most?

Dmitry: We went to But the most interesting was Washington, D. C.

Ludmila: Why Washington? I was sure it was not so important as New York.

Dmitry: Washington, D. C. is very important:

Ludmila: Did you go to the place where the US government works?

Dmitry: What do you mean by the US government? It is not as easy as you think.

Ludmila: All this is very interesting but I didn't quite get what they do in the Capitol and in the White House.

Dmitry:

Ludmila: I hope I'll have a chance to go to the US some day, see the White House and walk about the Capitol.

 **Comment on this:**

“The USA: one nation, many different people.”

 **Work in pairs. Read the questions and let your partner answer them.**

USA

1. What American presidents of the twentieth century do you know? What are they famous for?
2. Where are American laws made?
3. Can you name any mighty American rivers? What are they? Where do they rise and flow?
4. Where are the Great Lakes situated?
5. Why do you think the US has almost every kind of weather?
6. Why is the Grand Canyon one of America's main tourist attractions?

Scotland

1. What is the symbol of Scotland?
2. What city is the largest and busiest in Scotland?
3. What are the most interesting attractions in Scotland?

1. What Welsh cities can you name? 2. Will you call Wales an agricultural or an industrial country? Why?

LET US READ

- 8** Read the text and say: what you think about American food and drink; if there are any fast food restaurants in the place where you live.

AMERICAN FOOD AND DRINK

(by Terry Tomsha)

68. What is “American” food? The answer is that it is part Italian, part British, part German, part Mexican, part Chinese... When people from other countries came to live in the US, they brought different cooking traditions. Some of them opened restaurants. Today Americans enjoy food from all over the world. Over the years some foreign dishes changed a little. Doughnuts¹ were originally from Holland. In 1847 a young American boy told his mother that her doughnuts were never cooked in the middle. He cut out the centres and his mother cooked them — and they were very tasty!

Maybe the US is most famous for “fast foods”. The first fast food restaurants served hamburgers, but now they serve other kinds of food too. Inside there is often a “salad bar”, where you can help yourself to as much salad as you want.²



Americans eat a lot, and when they go to a restaurant, they don't expect to be hungry afterwards. Most restaurants will put a lot of food on your plate — sometimes it can be too much. But if you can't finish it all,

¹ a doughnut [ˈdəʊnət] — пончик

² to help yourself to as much salad as you want — взять себе столько салата, сколько хочется

don't worry: they will give you a "doggy bag" and you can take it home.

Most Americans now have a light breakfast instead of the traditional eggs, bacon, toast, orange juice and coffee. But on weekends there is more time, and a large late breakfast or early lunch ("brunch") is often eaten with family or friends. ☺

9 Say why you think:

- 1) American food is part Italian, part British, part German, etc.;
- 2) much famous food in America is "fast food";
- 3) there are usually "salad bars" inside fast food restaurants;
- 4) restaurant people bring "doggy bags" to those who can't finish all the food on their plates;
- 5) Americans now have a light breakfast.

LET US WRITE

10 Open the brackets to complete the text.

A PRESENT FROM CHICAGO

That year the winter in Chicago (*to be*) very bad. One morning when railway workers (*to come*) to the station they (*to see*) a lot of snow that (*to fall*) the night before. The workers (*not to know*) what to do with it. They (*not to see*) so much snow. They (*can*) not leave the snow on the platforms because it (*to be*) dangerous for passengers.

Suddenly, one of the workers (*to have*) a wonderful idea. The workers (*to put*) the snow on the freight¹ train and (*to send*) it south to Texas. The workers (*to think*) that the snow (*to melt*) away on the way.

The next day five tons of snow (*to arrive*) in Oklahoma City. The railway workers in Oklahoma City (*to be*) very

¹ freight [freit] — груз; грузовой



happy when they (*to see*) what Chicago workers (*to send*) them. "It's a wonderful present," they said and (*to put*) the snow on the children's playground. Some of the children in Oklahoma City never (*to see*) snow before!

11 Complete the sentences using the right preposition.

1. While Mr Johnson was away, his stepdaughter looked ... the farm.
2. The plane took ... and we saw the view of the mighty ocean and the yellow sandy beach below us.
3. Please, look ... this book and say what event in Russian history it describes.
4. — What are you looking ... ? — The book that I borrowed from the library. I want to take it
5. The teacher asked us to take ... a number of new words.
6. The trunk of the tree was so huge that four people could not take it
7. He looked ... the picture of a desert for a long time. Something in that picture attracted him.
8. The boy took ... his father: he was smart and very gentlemanlike.

12 a) Make sure that you know these words:

a **workaholic** [wɜ:kə'hɒlɪk] — «трудоголик», человек, который много трудится и не умеет отдохнуть
to **relax** [rɪ'læks] — расслабиться

b) Listen to the tape, 69, and say whose words they are:

1. “Concentrate on pleasant things.”
2. “I don’t have any time for hobbies.”
3. “Why don’t you go to some picturesque place in Scotland?”
4. “Your business is prosperous.”
5. “I’ve already painted fifteen pictures since I saw you.”

13 Answer the following questions.

1. Why did the businessman decide to see his doctor one day?
2. He was a prosperous businessman, wasn’t he?
3. What was the doctor’s decision about his patient’s health?
4. Why didn’t the businessman have any hobbies?
5. Why was it important for him to have some hobbies?
6. What exactly was the doctor’s advice?
7. Did he offer the businessman one or two things?
8. Which of the two did the businessman choose?
9. Do you think the doctor was surprised when he heard how the businessman was relaxing?

14 Put the sentences in the right order and make an outline of the story.

1. The doctor examined the patient.
2. The businessman worked hard again.
3. The doctor advised his patient to relax and have some hobbies.
4. The businessman came to the doctor.
5. The businessman decided to follow the doctor’s advice.
6. The businessman couldn’t sleep at night.

AUSTRALIA

coast seas world day fields grass child (n.)

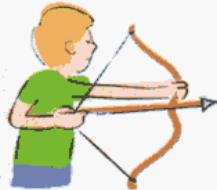
UNIT 20

GEOGRAPHICAL OUTLOOK



LET US REVIEW

- 1 Look at the pictures and say what is happening at the moment.



1. to shoot



2. to melt



3. to enter



4. to burn



5. to hang



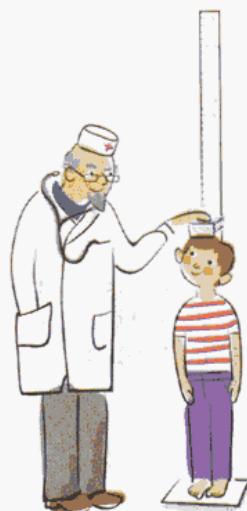
6. to hold



8. to take away



7. to admire



9. to measure

2 Complete the sentences using the right form of the verb.

1. Don't talk to him now, he (*thinks, is thinking*) of something. 2. I (*think, am thinking*) you are right: the weather will change very soon. 3. He says he (*likes, is liking*) my new picture. 4. — Where are the children? — They (*plant, are planting*) trees in the garden. 5. We all (*remember, are remembering*) that March 8 is a very special day. 6. She knows that her elder brother (*travels, is travelling*) in South America now. 7. Look, the rain (*begins, is beginning*). Let us run for it. 8. Now we (*want, are wanting*) to make a big party and invite all our friends.

3 Say what these people were doing at the definite time in the past.

EXAMPLE: Yesterday at 3 o'clock my mother (*to cook*). — Yesterday at 3 o'clock my mother was cooking.

1. Yesterday evening at 8 my brother (*to do*) his lessons.
2. When I came home from school, Kate (*to play*) with her toys.
3. While I was reading David (*to watch*) TV.
4. Before the lesson our teacher (*to look*) through our exercise books.
5. While the children were sleeping their parents (*to deco-*

rate) the New Year tree. 6. When the bell rang the pupils (*to write*) down their homework.

4 Remember and say:

- 1) what your family were doing yesterday after supper (at about 8 o'clock);
- 2) what your friends were doing when you came to school in the morning;
- 3) what your parents and grandparents were doing when you came home from school.

LET US READ AND LEARN

FOCUS

The Future Continuous Tense

will/shall + be + Ving

I, We	shall/will	be playing tennis at 5 o'clock tomorrow.
He, She, It You, They	will	
I, We	shan't/won't	be working in the garden at 5 o'clock tomorrow.
He, She, It You, They	won't	
Shall/Will	I/we	be working at 5 o'clock tomorrow? Yes, I/we shall/will.

Will	he/she/it/ you/they	be working at 5 o'clock tomorrow?	Yes, he/she/ it/you/they will.
			No, he/she/ it/you/they won't.

I'll be lying on the beach at this time tomorrow.
 My aunt Mary will be flying over the Atlantic Ocean at 12 o'clock on Wednesday.
 What time will you be leaving tomorrow?
 I'm sure they won't be playing football in an hour.

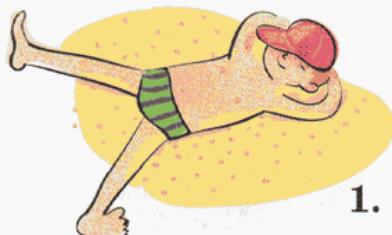


5 Open the brackets, use the verbs in *the future continuous tense* and complete the sentences.

- When you come to my place, I (*to do*) my homework.
- Very soon we (*to travel*) in the USA.
- You (*to write*) your story for the school newspaper after classes?
- Who (*to wait*) for the children at the bus stop?
- My friend (*not to play*) football tomorrow morning: he will be busy.
- Mike will be out at 8 o'clock: he (*to walk*) his dog.
- Mary (*to play*) the piano after supper?
- I know where Father will be at 6 o'clock — he (*to drive*) home from work.

6 Look at the pictures and say what John *will/won't be doing* in two months when he is on holiday.

EXAMPLE: When on holiday John will be playing tennis.
 When on holiday John won't be doing his room.



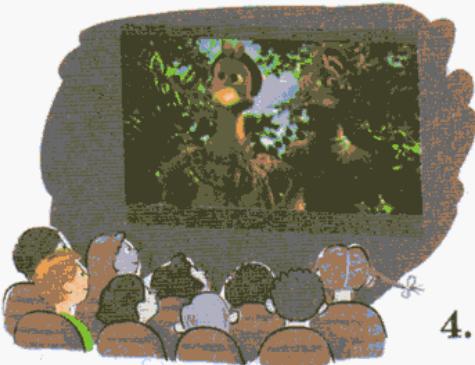
1.



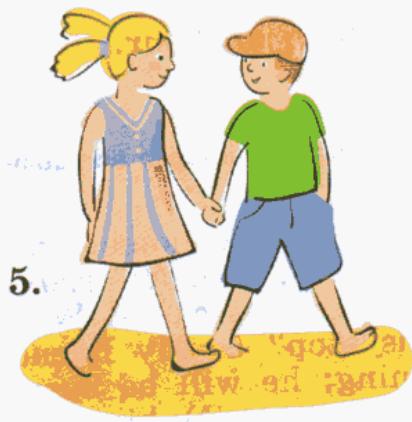
2.



3.



4.



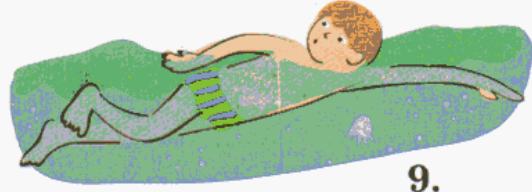
5.



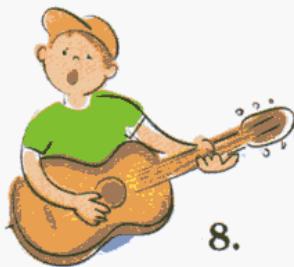
6.



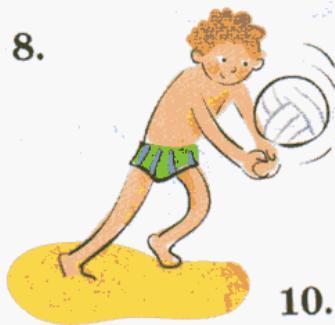
7.



9.



8.



10.

7

Express the same in English.

1. В воскресенье я буду готовить праздничный обед.
2. Вечером мы не будем смотреть телевизор, мы будем читать новую книгу.
3. В семь часов мы будем встречать маму на вокзале.
4. Когда вы придетe, они не будут обедать, они будут ждать вас.
5. Завтра утром мы будем сажать цветы около школы.
6. Ученики 6-го класса не будут писать диктант на следующем уроке английского языка, они будут читать новые тексты.
7. Приходите на встречу с этим писателем, он будет рассказывать о своих книгах.
8. Что вы будете делать завтра после обеда?
9. Они будут танцевать после концерта?
10. В следующем году мой старший брат будет учить французский язык.

FOCUS

at 6 o'clock yesterday

1. I was watching the match on television.
2. Were you working when I phoned you?
3. Nick wasn't typing his article.

at 6 o'clock tomorrow

1. I will be watching the match on TV.
2. Will you be working when I come?
3. Nick won't be typing his article.

8

Choose the right item.

1. Tom (*wasn't/won't be*) using his bicycle this evening. You may take it.
2. Be quick! In five minutes granny (*was/will be*) telling us my favourite tale.
3. Ann looked so beautiful. She (*was/will be*) wearing a new blue dress.
4. What (*will you be/were you*) doing after the film? Can you take the dog for a walk?
5. She says probably she (*was/will be*) having a sea voyage in May next year.
6. (*Will you be/Were you*) reading when Nick phoned?

Phrasal Verb to give

1. **to give back** — отдавать назад, возвращать

It's my school bag. **Give it back.**

I have read all these books and I want **to give them back.**

2. **to give out** — раздавать

Could you, please, **give these exercise books out?**

Now I'd like **to give you out** some books.

3. **to give away** — отдавать, дарить

She has **given away** all her best books.

I don't want to keep this money, I prefer **to give it away.**

4. **to give up** — a) отказаться, бросить, перестать заниматься чем-то

b) отказаться от мысли решить какую-то проблему (признать, что ты её решить не можешь)

Don't give up hope.

She decided not **to give up** music, though it wasn't easy to find time for it.

Guess what it means: I don't know, I **give up**. What is it? **to give up the idea of doing something**

At last we **gave up the idea of travelling** in such bad weather.

Why did you **give up the idea of learning French?**



9 Complete the sentences using the right word: *back, out, away, up*.

- Where is your collection of badges? — Oh, I've given it I'm not interested in badges anymore.
- My friend Liza said she would never give ... singing. And I think she is right.
- I want to ask Mike to give me my bicycle ... : I'd like to ride it after school.
- Who can help me to give

this food ... ? 5. Please don't give ... the idea of joining our basketball team. You are one of the best players I've ever met. 6. She always gives ... old newspapers and magazines after she has read them. 7. Have you given the books ... to the library yet? 8. My father gave ... skiing after he broke his leg.

16 Express the same in English.

1. Мне можно раздать все эти тарелки и чашки? Помогите мне, пожалуйста. 2. Никогда не расставайся с надеждой. 3. — Угадай, какой из двух городов — столица Австралии: Сидней или Канберра (Sydney or Canberra)? — Не знаю. Я сдаюсь. Скажи мне. 4. Зачем ты отдала этот журнал? Я ещё не читала его. 5. Я перестала заниматься танцами (dancing), когда мне было десять лет. 6. Я не могу отказаться от мысли съездить в Лондон, чтобы увидеть этот город собственными глазами. 7. Катя вернула книгу рассказов, теперь ты можешь взять её. 8. Попробуй ещё раз, не сдавайся. Ты можешь это сделать.

17 a) Read and guess what the underlined words mean.

- Can you give me another name for a “car”? — Of course I can. A car is the same as an automobile ['ɔ:təməbi:l].
- In this climate we need greenhouses to grow tropical ['trɒpɪkl] plants.
- There are many beautiful places on the territory ['terətəri] of this country.
- Agriculture plays the leading ['li:dɪŋ] role in the economy of this country.
- The orange, lemon and grapefruit are citrus ['sɪtrəs] fruits.
- ice — icy: Icy winds blew from the north and brought winter with them.
- general — generally: — Do you go to school by bus? — No, I generally walk.
- natural — naturally: I knew about the present they had prepared, so, naturally, I wasn't surprised.

9. **near** — nearly: Do you know how old he is now? He is nearly 15 years old!

b) Look these words up and make sure you have guessed right.

12 Read the words, look them up and then study the word combinations and sentences to know how to use them.

a **hemisphere** ['hemɪsfɪə] (*n*): the Northern Hemisphere, the Southern Hemisphere, the Eastern Hemisphere, the Western Hemisphere. A hemisphere is one half of the earth. Russia is situated in the Northern Hemisphere.

wheat [wi:t] (*n*): a field of wheat, golden wheat. This bread is made from wheat. Wheat is used to make flour and other food.

a **peach** [pi:tʃ] (*n*): a peach tree, a peach flower, peach jam, peach colour. I've bought some wonderful peaches for dinner. Peaches are my favourite fruit. Yesterday Mary was wearing her new peach dress.

a **apricot** ['eiprɪkɒt] (*n*): an apricot tree, apricot juice. Apricots look like small peaches. Apricots grow in the south of this country. Have you ever seen apricot trees in bloom? They look fantastic!

a **pear** [peə] (*n*): a pear tree, a plate full of pears, a green pear, a sweet pear, half a pear. Pears are my favourite fruit. Would you like some pears for dessert?

a **berry** ['berɪ] (*n*): berry — berries; to pick up berries, a lot of berries, wild berries. Did you know that a tomato is a berry? There are very few berries in the forest this year: it's too dry.

a **swamp** [swɒmp] (*n*): a cold swamp, a swamp in the forest, a dangerous swamp. Long ago the whole country was forest and swamp. These berries grow in the swamp. A swamp is land which is full of or covered with water.

swampy (*adj*): a swampy place.

sand [sænd] (*n*): yellow sand, warm sand, a sandcastle. The little children played in the sand.

sandy (*adj*): a long sandy beach, sandy hair. The sandy beaches in the South of England are quite famous.

vast [vɑ:st] (*adj*): a vast territory, a vast plain, a vast country. Something that is vast is very large. What is this

vast country called? The vast plains stretch for hundreds of miles.

humid ['hju:mɪd] (*adj*): a humid day, a humid climate, humid air, humid weather. — What's the weather like today? — It's hot and humid. The air is so humid here. Are summers in Moscow very humid?

lonely ['ləʊnlɪ] (*adj*): a lonely girl, a lonely tree, a lonely house in the country. If you are lonely you feel unhappy because you are alone or without friends. You can feel lonely even among friends.

except [ɪk'sept] (*prep*): Everyone except John was tired. I know nothing about him except that he lives next door.

only ['əvnli] (*adj*): the only people, the only person, the only problem. Is she the only person chosen for the job?

to occupy ['vkjupai] (*v*): to occupy a town, to occupy the country. The family occupied a little house on the beach. Is the seat occupied? Is the seat free?

to inhabit [ɪn'hæbit] (*v*): to inhabit a country. Many birds inhabit the forest.

inhabited/uninhabited: an uninhabited house, an uninhabited place, an inhabited island, an uninhabited castle, an uninhabited desert. How long has this house been uninhabited?

least [list] (little — less — least) (*adv*): the least known continent, the least inhabited area. It happened just when we least expected it.

least of all: No one listened, least of all the children.

13 Work in pairs. Ask your friend which of these he/she likes better. Let him/her answer. Don't forget to change over.

EXAMPLE: apples / pears — Which do you like better — apples or pears? — Pears, I think. They are my favourites.

peaches / apricots;

wild berries / garden berries;

juice / mineral water;

crowded beaches / lonely beaches;

sandy beaches / rocky beaches;

most difficult exercises / least difficult exercises;

dry weather / humid weather

most

most populated
most important
most developed
most discussed
most mentioned

least

least populated
least important
least developed
least discussed
least mentioned



14 Make up true sentences with the word combinations above.

15 Match the words with their definitions.

a swamp
an apricot
to inhabit
vast
a hemisphere
a berry
humid
a pear
wheat

very large
a fruit that looks like a bell
a plant from which flour is made
a small soft fruit
to populate
land filled or covered with water
a round soft orange or yellow fruit
like a peach but smaller
with a lot of water (about air and
weather) one half of the earth

16 Answer the questions using the words from ex. 12.

1. In what half of the earth is Australia situated?
2. What fruit can be grown in warm climate?
3. What is the climate like in South America near the Amazon River?
4. Where do cranberries¹ usually grow?
5. What fields in August look golden?
6. What do you call a tree standing alone in the middle of the field?
7. What is the name of the pinky-orange colour?
8. What do little children often build on the sea beach?

¹ cranberry ['krænbəri] — клюква

un-

known — **unknown**
 educated — **uneducated**
 populated — **unpopulated**
 cooked — **uncooked**
 covered — **uncovered**
 declared — **undeclared**
 spoken — **unspoken**
 comfortable — **uncomfortable**

in-

hospitable — **inhospitable**
 complete — **incomplete**
 dependent — **independent**
 formal — **informal¹**
 definite — **indefinite**
 expressive — **inexpressive**

17 In the table above find the words which go together with these.

EXAMPLE: ... dress/party — a formal/an informal dress/party

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| ... address/city/writer/territory | ... story/sentence/fable/fairy tale |
| ... article/time/place | ... artist/poet/architect |
| ... child/student/population | ... house/castle/palace |
| ... dinner/lunch/supper | ... country/man/government/Press |
| ... war/battle/decision | ... chair/shoes/coat/room |

18 Listen to the dialogue, 70, read it and then act it out.

WHAT DO WE KNOW ABOUT AUSTRALIA?

Alex: Have you had a nice evening?

Boris: Yes, I've been watching a documentary film on TV.

Alex: Really? What was it about?

Boris: About the largest island in the world.

Alex: The largest island? Do you mean Australia?

Boris: I do. Though I'm sure that Australia is the biggest island I know that many people think it's a continent.

¹ formal ['fɔ:ml] — официальный, служебный, вечерний (об одежде);
 informal [in'fɔ:ml] — повседневный, дружеский, неофициальный

Alex: Yes. That's what I think: it's the smallest continent on the earth.

Boris: And it is an independent country too.

Alex: I know that. What is its capital? Sydney?

Boris: No. It's Canberra, but Sydney is the largest city in the country.

Alex: Is English the official language?

Boris: Yes, it is, though it is a bit different from the language they speak in the USA and Britain.

LET US READ

19 Learn to read these proper names, 71.

The Indian ['ɪndiən] Ocean
the Pacific [pə'sifik] Ocean
the Murray ['mʌri] River
the Gibson ['gibsn] Desert
Europeans [,juərə'pi:ənz]
Australia [ɒ'streɪliə]
Antarctica [æn'ta:ktrɪkə]
Sydney ['sɪdnɪ]
Canberra ['kænbərə]
Melbourne ['melbən]
Darwin ['dɑ:wɪn]
the Great Sandy Desert
the Great Victoria [vɪk'tɔ:rɪə]
Desert

the Southern Hemisphere
the Australian [ɒ'streɪliən]
Capital Territory
New Zealand [,nju: 'zi:lənd]
New South Wales
Queensland ['kwi:nzlənd]
Brisbane ['brɪzbən]
Adelaide ['ædəleɪd]
Western Australia
Northern Territory
Alice Springs
Tasmania [tæz'meɪnjə]

20 Read the text and say what new things about Australia you have learned from it.

THE UNKNOWN SOUTHERN LAND

72. Even in medieval¹ times there were stories about a large continent in the Southern Hemisphere. But Europeans had never seen it. They wondered what it was like and whether² it was inhabited. They called this land *terra*

¹ medieval [,medi'lɪvl] — средневековый

² whether = if

australis incognita,¹ or “the unknown southern land” — Australia.

Nowadays when people speak of Australia they can mean three things: 1) Australia as a continent; 2) Australia as an island and 3) Australia as an independent country. Australia is the world’s largest island and its smallest continent. Asia is the continent nearest to Australia in the north. The icy shores of Antarctica lie to the south. New Zealand is to the east. To the west of Australia stretches the vast Indian Ocean. In the east the continent is washed by the Pacific Ocean.

Australia is a land of striking differences. In the centre of the continent and in the west more than 50% of the land is desert — dry and uninhabited. There are three deserts there — the Great Sandy Desert, the Great Victoria



¹ *terra australis incognita* (*Latin*) ['tera aust'ra:lis in'kognita]



1. AUST. CAPITAL TERRITORY

Desert and the Gibson Desert, situated between them. Naturally very few people live there. Most of them live on the narrow coasts of the east and southeast. Main cities, where people live among tall office buildings, automobile plants¹ and busy factories, are also situated there.

In the northeast, tropical forests cover the coast. In the mountains of the southeast the snow lies for seven months of the year. ☐

Australia is divided into six states and two territories.

New South Wales is Australia's leading industrial state. Most people live along the east coast, and most of them are in Sydney. Sydney is also the largest city in Australia.

In **Victoria** most people live in the south. Melbourne is the capital of the state and the largest city. Sheep and wheat are the main products here. Citrus fruits, grapes, peaches and apricots are grown along the Murray River.

Queensland is Australia's second largest state. Brisbane, its capital, is situated on the east coast. Queensland has

¹ a plant [pla:nt] — завод

long beautiful sandy beaches. Its coast is a popular place for holidaymakers. The climate along the east coast is hot and humid. It is the tropical corner of Australia. Bananas and other tropical fruits are grown here. Most of the land in the south is too dry for farming. Some of Australia's most unproductive desert lands occupy the bigger part of the state.

The state of **Western Australia** is dry and inhospitable except the southwestern corner of the state. Nearly all of the state's farms, sheep stations¹ and fruit gardens are situated there. The rest of the state is dry desert land with very few towns or lonely cattle stations.²

South Australia is the third largest state. Most of South Australia's people, farms and industry are in the southeastern part of the state. Adelaide is the capital and the largest city. Most of South Australia is too dry for farming. Farming very much depends on irrigation [*irɪ'geɪsn*] or underground water. Some of Australia's most unproductive desert lands occupy the greater part of the state. Wheat and fruit (apricots, pears, peaches, nectarines [*'nektrɪnz*] and grapes) are grown along the lower part of the Murray River.

Tasmania, the island state, is sometimes called the apple isle because it produces most of Australia's apples. Tasmania is one of the few places in Australia that have enough rain all year. Tasmania is Australia's leading producer of pears and berries of different kinds. Potatoes are also grown in some areas.

Northern Territory is the least populated and least developed part of Australia. Crocodiles still live in some of the swamps along the coast. Darwin is its capital and the only large settlement in the north. Alice Springs, generally called Alice of the Alice, is the only town in the south.

The capital of Australia is Canberra. The city doesn't belong to any state. It is situated on the **Australian Capital Territory (ACT)**, which occupies an area of 2,432 square kilometres.

¹ sheep stations — овцеводческие фермы в Австралии

² cattle stations — скотоводческие фермы в Австралии

21 Say "true", "false" or "don't know". Correct the false statements.

1. Australia is the largest continent in the world.
2. Australia is situated in the Southern Hemisphere.
3. Vast areas of desert cover most of Central and Western Australia.
4. Melbourne is the capital of Victoria.
5. The official name of the country is the Commonwealth of Australia.
6. There are 6 states in Australia.
7. Tasmania's an island state.
8. Australia is washed by the waters of three oceans.
9. Most people live in the north of the country.
10. Queensland's beaches are a popular place for holidaymakers.

22 Answer the following questions.

1. Where is Australia situated?
2. What bodies of water wash the continent?
3. What are the three Australian deserts?
4. What places in Australia are least populated and least developed?
5. In what way is Australia divided?
6. Can you name the Australian states and territories? What are they?
7. Which of the states is the leading industrial state?
8. In what places of Australia are fruit, wheat and potatoes grown?
9. Why do people from the south of the country often spend holidays in the northeast of Australia?
10. What city is Australia's capital? Where is it?

23 Australia is often called "the land of striking differences". Find in the text some facts to prove this.

LET US TALK

24 Look at the map of Australia and say:

- 1) how many countries are situated on the island;
- 2) where the three Australian deserts are situated;
- 3) what the name of the biggest lake on the continent is;
- 4) what Australian rivers you can name; which of them you think is the most important;
- 5) what mountain ranges there are on the territory of Australia;
- 6) what city is the national capital;
- 7) what cities are state capitals;
- 8) what other cities you can find on the map of Australia.

25

- a) Look at the map of Australia and find on it the following cities: *Canberra, Sydney, Melbourne, Alice Springs, Brisbane, Hobart, Perth, Adelaide.*
 b) Choose one of the cities and speak about it using the information below.

CANBERRA

- an important centre of learning;
- the seat of the federal¹ government;
- built in 1923—1927;
- 310 000 people;
- a lot of government buildings;
- the place where the National University of Australia is situated.

SYDNEY

- Australia's largest city; 3,5 mln people;
- founded on January 26, 1788;
- the first European settlement in the country;
- Australia's leading seaport;
- a city of old and new buildings;
- a lot of lovely parks and gardens.

MELBOURNE

- Australia's second largest city; over 3 mln people;
- the financial centre of the nation;
- from 1901 to 1927 — the seat of the federal government;
- stone buildings remind visitors of cities in England;
- an industrial city;
- factories produce many goods.

ADELAIDE

- over 1 mln people;
- famous for Adelaide's Festival of Arts held every two years;
- a large centre exporting wine.

PERTH

- the major west coast city, over 1 mln people;

¹ federal ['fedərəl] — федеральный

- the most beautiful Australian city which reminds many Americans of cities in Southern California;
- a sea port.

HOBART

- founded in 1804;
- Australia's oldest city;
- surrounded by a small agricultural area;
- fruit, dairy products, wool — are exported through the city.

BRISBANE

- over 1 mln people;
- the only large Australian city with subtropical climate;
- very beautiful, with a lot of parks and gardens;
- an important export centre exporting wool, meat, wheat, sugar.

ALICE SPRINGS

- one of the most important cities;
- a cattle centre;
- is connected with Adelaide by the railroad line;
- the only town in the south of the Northern Territory.

26 Choose the place in Australia you would like to visit and explain why.

27 Imagine that you are having a geography lesson tomorrow. Get ready to speak about Australia. Don't forget to mention:

- the geographical position of the country;
- its main states and territories;
- the main Australian cities;
- the most and least populated areas;
- mountains and rivers in Australia;
- things the country produces.

28 Imagine that you have to tell an Australian about Russia. Use the outline of ex. 27 and speak about your country.

LET US WRITE

29 Do ex. 2, ex. 3, ex. 5, ex. 7, ex. 10 in writing.

30 Fill in *least* or *most* to make the sentences complete.

1. The eastern coast is the ... populated part of Australia, the centre of the continent is its ... populated part. 2. I don't think it is the ... important problem of all discussed today. I believe it is one of the ... important. 3. The Northern Territory is the ... developed part of Australia if we speak of its industry. 4. The Bill of Rights is one of the ... often mentioned political documents when people discuss the history of the US Constitution. 5. Problems of ecology, water and air pollution are the ... often discussed problems at all meetings of different ecological clubs and societies.

31 Write eight sentences with these word combinations.

An uncomfortable chair, an incomplete story, an unknown land, an independent country, an informal party, an unbuilt cottage, an unpopulated territory, an inhospitable place.

32 Complete the sentences using *future simple* or *future progressive*.

1. — What you (*to do*) tomorrow afternoon at about 6 o'clock? — Nothing special. — Why? — I (*to tell*) you later. 2. I know that at the party everybody (*to dance, to laugh and to enjoy themselves*). 3. — What a huge pile of books! — I (*to help*) you to take them to the library. 4. Australia (*to be*) the first country they are going to visit.

33 Look at the words again and get ready to write a spelling quiz on them.



an automobile, tropical, a territory, leading, citrus, icy, generally, naturally, nearly, a hemisphere, wheat, a peach, an apricot, a pear, a berry (berries), swampy, sandy, vast, humid, lonely, except, only, to occupy, to inhabit, inhabited, uninhabited, least of all

LET US LISTEN AND DISCUSS

34 a) Make sure that you know these words and word combinations:

- a **funfair** ['fʌnfeə] — парк аттракционов
eager ['i:gə] — желающий, стремящийся к чему-либо
a **ride** [raɪd] — аттракцион
a **roller coaster** ['rəʊlə ,kəʊstə] — аттракцион «Американские горки»

b) Listen to the tape, 73, and complete the sentences.

1. Mrs Harris decided to take her children to
2. First Mr Harris ... to go, but at last he had to agree.
3. The family went to the park in
4. The territory of the park was
5. Mr Harris enjoyed the funfair more
6. He ate a lot of
7. Mrs Harris and the children looked
8. Mrs Harris was tired after
9. “He’s worse than a small child, because... .”

35 Pretend that you are talking to Mr Harris and ask him at least 5 questions about the funfair.

36 Speak about the visit to the funfair on the part of:

- 1) Mr Harris; 2) Mrs Harris; 3) one of the children.



UNIT 21 CLIMATE AND WILDLIFE

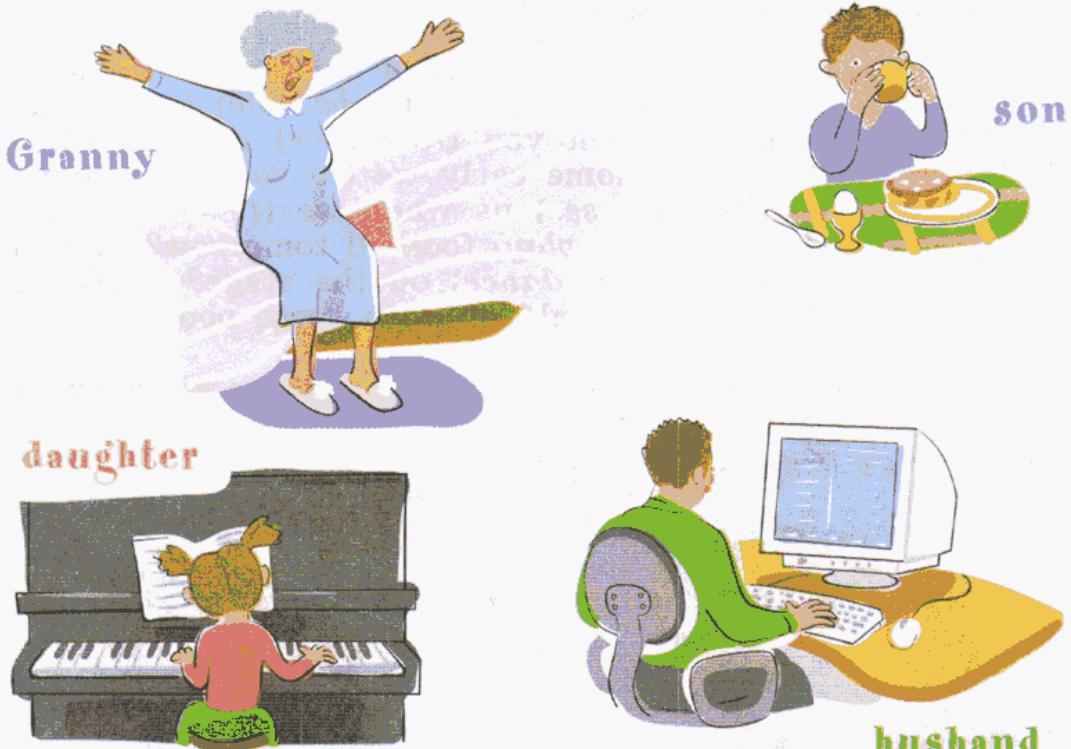
LET US REVIEW

1 Say what you will be doing tomorrow at:

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 7 o'clock a.m. | 4 o'clock p.m. |
| 10 o'clock a.m. | 7 o'clock p.m. |
| in the afternoon | 11 o'clock p.m. |

2 Look at the pictures and say what Mary's relatives will be doing when she arrives at work.

EXAMPLE: When Mary arrives at work her granny will be getting up.



3 Think and say what your relatives will be doing when you come home from school.

EXAMPLE: When I come home from school my little sister will be playing with her new doll.

4 Mr Wilson is flying to Sydney, Australia. It's a very long way. Say what Mr Wilson will be doing during his flight.

EXAMPLE: the passengers occupy their seats/to read — As soon as the passengers occupy their seats Mr Wilson will be reading.

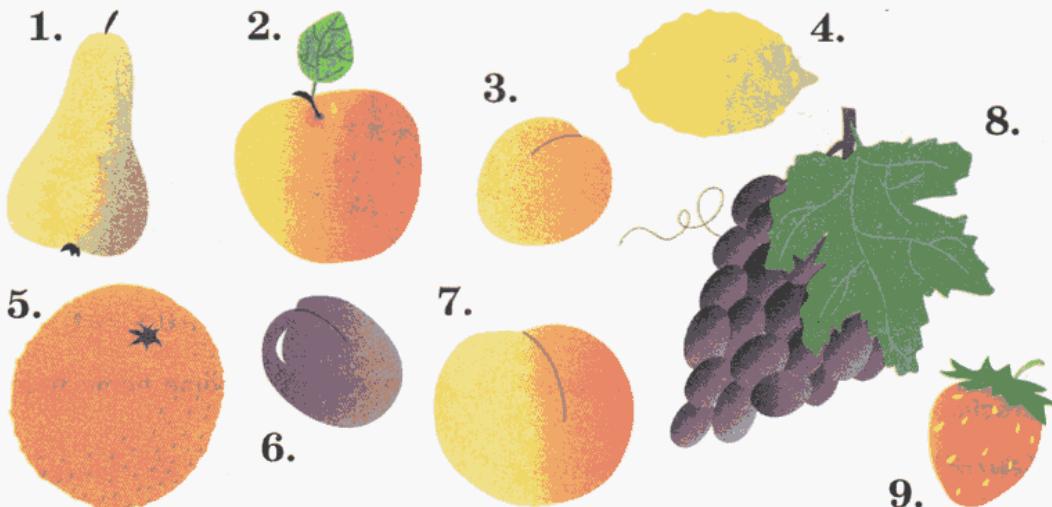
1. the plane takes off / to play a computer game
2. lunch is brought / to talk to the passenger next to him
3. the "no smoking" notice appears / to sleep

- the video is turned on / to watch a film
- the plane starts landing / to look through the window

5 Use the verbs in brackets (in present indefinite, present continuous, future indefinite or future continuous) to complete the sentences. (In some cases more than one tense is possible.)

- I'll phone you when I (to arrive) in Moscow.
- Come at seven: we (to have) dinner and you (to be able) to join us.
- What you (to do) when you (to arrive) at the hotel?
- If mother (to come) home early we (to go) to the cinema together.
- You (to see) us when we (to climb) that hill over there.
- Who (to play) football tomorrow?
- You (to look) at me when I (to dance) on the stage?
- When you (to tell) me what I should do with these books?

6 Look at the pictures and name the fruits. Say which of them are citrus fruits.



7 Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

- She won't come to the party ... you don't invite her.
- We'll go on holiday ... father comes back from his business trip.
- ... my brother comes home from school we'll be watching a new video film.

when
if
before
as soon as

4. I always do my lessons ... I go for a walk.
5. ... spring comes the snow starts melting and we see the first flowers and young grass.
6. It's very difficult to survive in a foreign country ... you don't know its language.
7. People can't be happy ... they don't learn to keep their environment clean and healthy.
8. ... I saw him I understood that he was in shock and unhappy.

8 a) Make adjectives from these nouns. Say what they mean and use them in sentences of your own.

EXAMPLE: ice — icy (ледяной, льдистый, покрытый льдом):
Be careful, the roads are icy this morning.

sand —	cloud —	snow —
swamp —	grass —	salt —
water —	rain —	sugar —
wind —	sun —	mist —

b) Find antonyms to these words and use them in sentences of your own.

EXAMPLE: hospitable — inhospitable: We were very much surprised that the people who met us were inhospitable and unfriendly.

inhabited —	definite —	comfortable —
occupied —	covered —	complete —
dependent —	populated —	known —

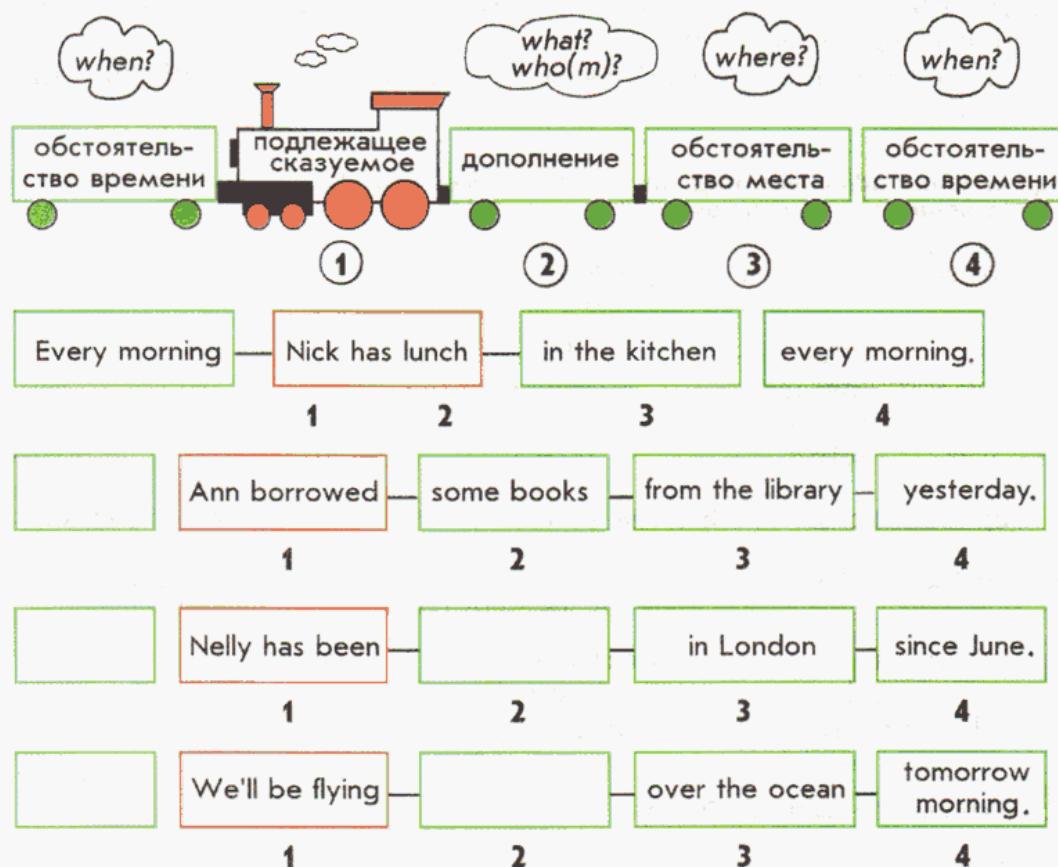
9 Express the same in English.

1. Учитель спросил меня, кто населяет территорию этой огромной страны. 2. Цитрусовые деревья обычно растут в тропическом климате, верно? 3. Он хотел знать, где в Англии выращивают пшеницу. 4. Это побережье известно своими обширными пляжами. 5. Из всех фруктов я люблю груши меньше всего. 6. Какие англоговорящие страны, кроме Британии и США, ты знаешь? 7. Какие континенты расположены в северном полушарии? 8. Какие ведущие промышленные страны ты можешь назвать?

LET US READ AND LEARN

Word Order

I



10 Put the words in the right order to make sentences.

1. today / have got / people / a lot of environmental problems.
2. has canned / a lot of fruit / she / since August.
3. I / hedges / have never seen / in Australia.
4. in London / Mike / in 1990 / was born.
5. attract / the Niagara Falls / a lot of tourists / every summer.

II

a) before the main verb:

<i>подлежащее</i>	often usually always never ever	sometimes generally seldom already just	still both all also	<i>сказуемое</i>
-------------------	---	---	------------------------------	------------------

Nelly **often** comes home late.
 She **sometimes** feels sad and unhappy.
 They have **just** arrived.
 We **all** live in Moscow.
 They **both** know English.
 They don't **often** go shopping.
 Have you **both** been to Italy?
 Isn't **still** raining?
 Do you **also** ride home on a bike?
 We have **never** seen dodos.

b) after the verb "to be":

<i>подлежащее</i>	глагол "to be (am, is, are, was, were)"	often usually always never ever	sometimes generally seldom already just	still both all also
-------------------	--	---	---	------------------------------

She is **always** on time.
 We were not **usually** late.
 Are they **all** so independent?

Bill is **also** ill.
 Are they **both** doctors?

11 Use the words from the box and put them in the right places.

often	always	still	just	all
usually	never	generally	both	also
sometimes	ever	already		

1. My sister borrows books from the local library.
2. Are they well educated?
3. People in many countries live in poverty.
4. Real gentlemen stand up when a woman comes in.
5. Mary Drake is a congresswoman.
6. Have you seen skyscrapers?
7. Do they choose picturesque places for their picnics?
8. The climate here is humid.
9. You can't see big crowds of people on this lonely beach.
10. Are they fluent in English?

FOCUS

Phrasal Verb**to make**

1. **to make up** —
a) сочинять, придумывать,
b) гримировать, накладывать косметику
Come here, children, and listen to my new story. I've just **made it up**.
They **made him up** as an old man for the last act of the play.
to make up one's face — краситься
to make up with somebody — помириться с кем-либо
They kissed and **made it up**.
2. **to make out** — разобраться, понять (*с трудом*)
I can't **make out** what he is saying.
3. **to make off** — быстро уйти, убежать, сбежать
Where is Jack? — He **made off** soon after dinner.



Complete the sentences using the missing words: *up, out, off*.

1. She is a very strange girl, I can't make her
2. The boy gave the letter to Sherlock Holmes and made
3. I don't like it when young girls make themselves
4. Do you know what wonderful poem Ted made ... for Christmas?
5. Please make it ... with your brother. You both look so unhappy.
6. I don't believe you. You've made it all
7. Don't make I've got something to tell you.
8. Let's make him ... as a pirate, dress him in a pirate costume and ask him to sing a loud pirate song.

13 Express the same in English.

1. Мы очень скоро помирились и отправились гулять вместе. 2. Он всегда сам сочиняет песни, а потом сам исполняет их. 3. Ты не поможешь мне? Я не могу разобрать без очков, что здесь написано. 4. Она очень молода. Будет трудно загrimировать её под старуху. 5. Ты удрал так быстро, что я не смог попрощаться с тобой. 6. Что он сказал? Я ничего не понял.

14 a) Read and guess what the underlined word means.

The animals that are now on the earth came from primitive ['primitiv] forms.

b) Look the word up to make sure you have guessed right.

15 Read the words, look them up and then study the word combinations and sentences to know how to use them.

extraordinary [ɪk'strɔ:dnrɪ] (*adj*): an extraordinary life, an extraordinary success. Something which is very unusual is extraordinary. This is the most extraordinary book I've ever read.

extremely [ɪk'stri:mli] (*adv*): extremely well, extremely important, extremely serious. He has always been an extremely serious man.

to surf [sɜ:f] (*v*): to go surfing. If you surf, you ride towards the shore on the top of a big wave, standing or lying on a surfboard. Where is the best place to go surfing?

to lay [leɪ], laid, laid, laying (*v*): to lay the baby on a bed, to lay the pillow on a sofa. If you lay something somewhere, you put it there carefully. She laid her hand on his shoulder.

lay the table: I always help mother to lay the table before dinner.

lay eggs: Do only birds lay eggs? — Not only. So do reptiles.

to grow up (*v*): If you tell someone to grow up you tell him/her to stop behaving in a silly or childish way. They grew up in the early days of television.

grown-up (*adj*): grown-up children.

a **grown-up** (*n*): The boys stood laughing while the grown-ups watched them. I saw a grown-up enter the room.

to resemble [rɪ'zembəl] (*v*): to resemble your father, to resemble a situation. Both you and your father resemble uncle Jack. Does the cottage resemble the place where you lived last summer?

a **bush** [bʊʃ] (*n*): 1. a rose bush, a low bush. A bush is a low plant which is smaller than a tree.

2. the bush. The bush is the wild, uncultivated area of Australia. I went for a walk in the bush.

bulky (*adj*): a bushy tail, bushy hair — very thick hair.

to beat about the bush: Stop beating about the bush, tell me exactly what you want.

curious ['kjʊəriəs] (*adj*): to be curious to know, a curious child, curious children. Someone who is curious is interested in things and wants to know more about them. Are you curious to know how that old clock works?

graceful ['greɪfl] (*adj*): a graceful dancer, a graceful figure. Tigers are very graceful animals. I have never seen anybody who is as graceful as Margaret.

to notice ['nəʊtɪs] (*v*): to notice a man, to notice a change in somebody. Suddenly Ralph noticed that it was raining hard. Did you notice a fat man sitting at the front?

a **notice** (*n*): In the hall there was a notice which said "Visitors welcome at any time."

suitable ['sju:təbl] (*adj*): suitable men, a suitable flat, to be suitable for something. Do you think she is suitable for living there? Such flats are not suitable for large families.

to escape [ɪ'skeɪp] (*v*): to escape from the police, to escape from prison. Even if he can escape, where will he go?

constant ['kɒnstənt] (*adj*): constant success, constant pains, a constant companion. David says he suffers from constant pains in the stomach.

16 Divide the words in three categories (N; V; Adj) and make up your own sentences with them. (Some words can fit both categories.)

Extraordinary, primitive, bush, bushy, graceful, notice, surf, grow up, resemble, escape, suit, suitable, constant.

17 Say:

- 1) what extraordinary things you know;
- 2) where people can surf;
- 3) who lays the table in your family;
- 4) which of your relatives you resemble;
- 5) what animals have bushy tails;
- 6) what people are called curious;
- 7) if it is good to be curious;
- 8) what animals can be called graceful;
- 9) where people can escape from;
- 10) names of what bushes you know.

18 Look at the pictures and say which clothes are suitable for:



19 Match the words.

- | | |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| to surf | the difference |
| to notice | about the bush |
| to lay | something that you saw before |
| to resemble | on the waves |
| to escape | eggs |
| to beat | from prison |

LET US READ

20 Listen to the tape,  74, and learn to read the names of these animals and plants:

a kangaroo [,kæŋgə'ru:] — кенгуру



а platypus ['plætipəs] or a duckbill ['dʌkbɪl] — утконос



an echidna [ɪ'kɪdnə] or a spiny anteater ['ænt,i:tə] — ехидна, или колючий муравьед

an emu ['i:mju:] — эму



a rat [ræt] — крыса

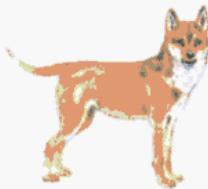


a koala [kəʊ'a:lə] — коала



an eucalyptus [ju:kə'lɪptəs] — эвкалипт

a dingo [ˈdɪŋgəʊ] — динго



a kookaburra [ˈkʊkə,bʌrə] (a laughing jackass) — зимородок-хохотун



a lyrebird [ˈlaɪəbɜ:d] — лирохвост



a cockatoo [ˌkɒkə'tu:] — какаду (австралийский попугай)



a buffalo [ˈbʌfələʊ] — буйвол



a rabbit [ˈræbit] — кролик

21 Read the text and say why Australia is an extraordinary country.

THE MOST EXTRAORDINARY COUNTRY TO EXPLORE

Sometimes Australia is called “the upside down¹ world”. Can you guess why? Because Australia lies in the Southern Hemisphere, where winter comes in July and summer begins in December. During the Christmas holidays people often sunbathe on the beach or swim and surf in the ocean.

¹ upside down [,ʌpsaɪd ˈdaʊn] — перевернутый вверх тормашками



Australia is the hottest place in the Southern Hemisphere. In July the usual temperatures are from 12° to 20° C. In January the temperatures are from 20° to 30° C above zero or higher.

Most parts of Australia do not receive enough rain. Only one sixth of the continent — a belt of land along the north, east, and south coasts — is comfortably humid. This narrow belt of land is the place where summers are warm and sunny and winters are mild.

Most of the dry land is uninhabited, which explains Australia's small population — about 18 million people (compare: the UK population is about 58 million people).

75. It is interesting to notice that though most of the territory is too dry or too hot Australia has an extraordinary collection of birds and animals. Many of them are found only there. Early explorers were so surprised by the emu and the kangaroo that they described the continent as



the land where birds “ran instead of flying and animals hopped¹ instead of running.”

Australia is the home of two of the world’s most primitive mammals — the duckbill or platypus and the echidna or spiny anteater. They are the only mammals that lay eggs. The kangaroo is perhaps the best known of Australia’s animals. There are more than 40 different kinds of kangaroos in Australia, in many different colours and sizes. The big red kangaroo and the grey kangaroo may be as tall as a grown-up man. Some kangaroos are about the size of a large dog. The smallest kangaroo is the rat kangaroo. Another well-known Australia’s animal is the koala that

¹ to hop — подпрыгивать, передвигаться скакками

resembles a teddy bear. It spends most of its life in eucalyptus trees and eats only the leaves of these trees.

Among other animals found in Australia is the dingo, a wild dog which is yellowish brown and has a bushy tail. The emu, Australia's largest bird is also one of the largest in the world. It cannot fly but is a good runner. Another curious bird is the kookaburra that is often called the "laughing jackass". The bushy country¹ rings with its laughter. Australians like this bird so much that they even made up a song about it:

Kookaburra

Kookaburra sits on an old gum tree.²

Merry, merry king of the bush is he.

Laugh, Kookaburra, laugh, Kookaburra,

Happy your life must be.

Other Australian birds are graceful lyrebirds, brilliantly coloured parrots and the great white cockatoo.

Two animals were brought to the country by the Europeans and have become wild in Australia. These are the buffalo, brought from India, and the European rabbit. Buffaloes were brought to the north coast as work animals early in the 19th century. They escaped and multiplied and now inhabit the swampy river valleys around Darwin. Each year hunters shoot thousands of them.

Rabbits were brought more than 100 years ago. There are now so many of them in Australia that sheep farmers have constant wars against the rabbits because they destroy so much grass.

No matter how far from Europe Australia can be, many people who are fond of travelling would like to visit this land because it is such an extraordinary place to explore!



Say if these statements are "true" or "false".

1. The hottest season in Australia is summer.
2. All parts of Australia receive enough rain.
3. Australia's population

¹ the bushy country ['buʃi 'kʌntri] — лесистая местность в Австралии

² a gum tree ['gʌm ,tri:] — эвкалипт

is larger than the population of the UK. 4. No mammals lay eggs. 5. There are many different kinds of kangaroos — big and small. 6. The koala looks like a nice soft teddy bear. 7. The name of Australia's wild dog is 'bingo'. 8. The buffalo was brought to Australia from India.

23 Remember the text (ex. 21) and complete the sentences.

1. Sometimes Australia is called
2. In Australia winter comes in ... and summer begins in
3. During the Christmas holidays people
4. Australia is the hottest place
5. Only one sixth of the continent is comfortably
6. ... which explains Australia's small population.
7. Australia has an extraordinary collection of
8. Early explorers described Australia as the land where birds ... and animals

LET US TALK

24 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about Australia.

EXAMPLE: the upside down world / Why ... ? — Why is Australia often called the upside down world? — It is called like that because it is situated in the Southern Hemisphere; the hottest season is winter... .

1. found only in Australia / What animals ... ?
2. lay eggs / What mammals ... ?
3. kinds of kangaroos / How many ... ?
4. a teddy bear / What animal ... ?
5. brought from India / What's the name of the animal ... ?
6. become wild / How ... ?
7. constant wars against the rabbits / Why ... ?
8. an extraordinary place to explore / Why ... ?

25 Imagine that you have just come back from Australia. Talk to your friends about your impressions of the country.

26 You have read two texts about Australia. They give you some important information but not everything you may want to know. Work in groups and make up a list of things you would like to find out about Australia. At home every pupil should try to find out about these things. Share your information in class.

27 Say why Australia can be a good example of a country where people broke the ecological balance and are suffering from it. What should people remember for it not to happen again?

28 Compare the wild animals of Russia and Australia. Are there any animals you can find in both countries?

LET US WRITE

29 Do ex. 4, ex. 9, ex. 10, ex. 11, ex. 13 in writing.

30 Express the same in English.

1. В моей семье взрослые никогда не курят. 2. Мои дедушка и бабушка недавно вышли на пенсию. 3. На острове Тасмания часто идут дожди? 4. Вчера у меня была возможность (шанс) покататься верхом на лошади в парке. 5. Приёмные дети господина Брауна никогда не жили в бедности. 6. Они оба полны мудрости и доброты. 7. Мне иногда бывает грустно по вечерам. 8. Иногда по утрам мой брат ест слишком много.

31 Imagine that you have a chance to visit Australia. Write what places you would like to visit (see) and why.

32 Look at the words again and get ready to write a spelling quiz on them.



primitive, extraordinary, extremely, to surf, to lay (laid, laid), to lay the table, to lay eggs, to grow up (a grown-up), to resemble, a bush, bushy, curious, graceful, to notice, suitable, to escape, constant

LET US LISTEN AND DISCUSS

33 Listen to the tape, 76, and answer the questions.

1. What was the old gentleman's job before he retired?
2. What did he do in his free time? 3. Why did he go to

the park? 4. What did he notice in the park one day? 5. What kind of competition were the boys having? 6. Who won in the competition? 7. How did he win?

34 Retell the text on the part of:

- 1) the old gentleman; 2) one of the boys; 3) the cat.

UNIT 22

CONSOLIDATION FOUR

LET US TALK

- 1** Look at the pictures and name the animals.

EXAMPLE: Number one is an emu.



- 2** a) Imagine that you are going to meet an Australian writer. Prepare 8–10 questions that you would like to ask him about his country.
b) Work in pairs. Act out the dialogue with the writer for whom you have prepared your questions. Then answer his/her questions about Russia.

3 Give five reasons why you would like to go to Australia.

4 Comment on this:

Australia is the land where birds run instead of flying and animals hop instead of running.

5 a) Complete the dialogue putting the sentences from the box in their right places. Listen to the tape, **CD 77**, and check your version.

- Your English is very good.
- Wonderful. That's very kind of you.
- No. I live in Canberra, I'm here to visit my granny.
- Two weeks ago. I've been here since May 5.
- Oh, please. Could you hold my bag while I'm taking this picture?
- You're welcome.



Ralph: Can I help you?

Masha: ...

Ralph: Certainly. It's not at all heavy.

Masha: OK. I've done it. Thanks for your help. Sydney looks great in this light. Thank you again.

Ralph: ...

Masha: ...

Ralph: Are you from Sydney?

Masha: No, I'm from Russia.

Ralph: Russia? When did you come here?

Masha: ...

Ralph: ...

Masha: Thanks. I am learning English at school. I hope that after my stay in Australia I'll speak English better.

Ralph: Do you find it difficult to understand Australian English?

Masha: Quite. The accent is a little bit unusual. Though I understand nearly everything. And you? Do you live here?

Ralph: ...

b) Act out the conversation and continue it.

6 Find the right place for the words in brackets.

1. Mary has been an extremely polite girl. (*always*) 2. — Where is mother? — She's gone out. (*just*). 3. Nick resembles my uncle George. (*often*) 4. Is it raining? (*still*) 5. They were late for the English class yesterday. (*both*) 6. My aunt doesn't eat out. (*generally*) 7. What do you have for breakfast? (*usually*) 8. My elder brother is ill. (*never*) 9. They stay at the same hotel every summer. (*also*) 10. I've got two cousins. We live in Moscow. (*all*)

7 a) Look at the pairs of verbs and remember what they mean.

to take off		to take away		to take back		to give up
to make off		to give away		to give back		to make up

b) Make the right choice and complete these sentences with the verbs given above.

1. Bill, ... off your hat when you enter the room. 2. He asked me to ... him back the money I had borrowed. 3. Don't forget to ... the bike back to Helen. You have been keeping it too long! 4. I think you should ... up the idea of going there. It's too dangerous. 5. Hurry up! The

plane is ... off in half an hour. 6. If you are not going to eat the salad I'll ... it away. 7. The story Nick ... up was the best. 8. He took a gun and ... off. 9. If you are not going to collect stamps anymore, ... your collection away to your little brother. 10. If you can't do this crossword at once, don't ... up, try it again!

LET US READ

- 8 Read the text and say: a) what ways people use to make new words; b) how many words the most complete dictionary of the English language has.

WORDS WE USE

88. As you know one of the very good ways to get new words is to borrow them from other people. English is full of words borrowed from other languages. The possibilities for borrowing words are endless.

People can also make new words by using the names of people or places or the characters in stories. The word *atlas*¹ has that name because long ago on a famous collection of maps, there was a picture of the Greek god Atlas holding up the world.

People can make words by cutting big ones down into small ones. When you say a mechanical person is a *robot* ['rəʊbɒt], you are using a cut-down form of *robotnik*, which means *worker* in several Slavic² languages. Nowadays people often say *doc* instead of *doctor*; *phone* — instead of *telephone*; *fridge* — instead of *refrigerator*.

You cut down long word combinations or sentences and make them into short words by joining together the first letters of each word. UNESCO³ comes from the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.

¹ atlas ['ætləs] — атлас

² Slavic ['slə:vɪk] — славянский

³ UNESCO [ju:'neskəʊ] — ЮНЕСКО, организация при ООН по вопросам образования, науки и культуры

MP stands for a member of Parliament, USA — for the United States of America.

One of the most complete dictionaries of the English language is *Webster's Third New International Dictionary*. It has more than 450 000 words. No person knows all of them, but most grown-ups are able to understand about 35 000 words. In fact, people use only about one-tenth of the words they understand. ☺

9 Say “true”, “false” or “don’t know”.

1. English has got a lot of borrowed words.
2. Some words came to English from Holland.
3. There are no Russian borrowings in English.
4. Sometimes names of people or places are used to make new words.
5. The word *atlas* came from Italy.
6. There are 550 words in *Webster's Third New International Dictionary*.
7. People usually use about 3 500 words when they talk.
8. MP stands for “a member of Parliament”.
9. VIP stands for “a very important person”.

LET US WRITE

10 Express the same in English.

a) 1. Я видела, как Анна накрывала на стол. 2. Мы наблюдали, как дети занимались серфингом. 3. Я хочу, чтобы ты нашла подходящее место на берегу. 4. Не ходи вокруг да около! Я ожидаю, что ты всё мне объяснишь. 5. Позволь мне посетить Австралию, папочка.

b) 1. Несколько ядерных станций было закрыто на территории России, потому что люди думали, что они опасны. 2. Проблемы загрязнения окружающей среды будут осуждаться на конференции в Мельбурне. 3. Члены королевской семьи были приглашены посетить Россию снова. 4. Мама сказала, что стол будет накрыт вовремя. 5. Эта необитаемая земля редко посещается исследователями.

11 Yesterday Mrs Nelson and her two sons, Bob and Sam, were going to Sydney by bus. It was very noisy in the bus and the boys didn't often hear what their mother was saying. All the way they asked each other one and the same question: "What did she say?" These are the things that Mrs Nelson said or asked. Report them.

1. "Did you hear anything of that mysterious Mr Hyde?"
2. "Have you read May's periodicals?"
3. "Yesterday I received a lot of mail."
4. "We shall go to the opera house in two days."
5. "When did you send a telegram to your uncle Peter?"
6. "When we arrive in Sydney we will take a taxi."
7. "I am sure your granny will get over the pain in her leg."
8. "Your cousin is nearly sixteen."

LET US LISTEN AND DISCUSS

12 a) Make sure that you know these words and word combinations:

the Alps [ælps] — Альпы

a rucksack ['raksæk] — рюкзак

don't speak too soon — не торопись с выводами

b) Listen to the tape,  79, and say whose words they are:

1. "Sitting on a chair for eight hours every day is not very good for your health."
2. "The map is flat and the mountains are not."
3. "I am going to America in August."
4. "Can I borrow your rucksack?"

13 Answer the questions.

1. What did Jack do at work? 2. What did he like to do during his summer holidays? 3. Whom did he visit one day? 4. What did Jack want to borrow from Nick? 5. How did Nick explain that Jack couldn't walk from one place to another in one day?

14 Tell the story to your friends on Nick's part.

VOCABULARY

adj — *adjective* — прилагательное
adv — *adverb* — наречие
conj — *conjunction* — союз
n — *noun* — существительное
pl — *plural* — множественное число

prep — *preposition* — предлог
pron — *pronoun* — местоимение
sb — *somebody*
sth — *something*
v — *verb* — глагол

A

abbey ['æbi] аббатство
above [ə'bʌv] над
 above zero выше нуля
accent 5 ['æksənt] акцент
accept [æk'sept] принимать
 to accept the **invitation** принять приглашение
according [ə'kɔ:dɪŋ] согласно, соответственно
accident ['æksɪdənt] несчастный случай
across [ə'krɒs] через
act 10 [ækt] действовать
action ['ækʃn] действие
activity [æk'tivəti] деятельность, активность
add [æd] добавлять, прибавлять
admire 8 [əd'maɪə] восхищаться
advice [əd'veɪs] совет
advise [əd'veɪz] советовать
afraid [ə'freɪd] испуганный
 to be **afraid of sb/sth** бояться кого-л./чего-л.
Africa ['æfrɪkə] Африка
African ['æfrɪkən] африканский
after ['a:ftə] после, потом
agree [ə'grɪ:] соглашаться

agricultural 14 [,ægrɪ'kʌltʃərəl]
сельскохозяйственный
agriculture 14 ['ægrɪ,kʌltʃə] сельское хозяйство
airmail ['eərmейl] авиапочта
Alaska [ə'læskə] Аляска
alien ['eɪljən] чужестранец, иноземец; инопланетянин
all [ɔ:l] весь
all in all ['ɔ:l in 'ɔ:l] в целом
allow [ə'lau] позволять
 to be **allowed to do sth** получить разрешение сделать что-л.
already [ɔ:l'redi] уже
amendment 17 [ə'mendmənt] поправка (к конституции)
America [ə'merɪkə] Америка
Central America Центральная Америка
North America Северная Америка
South America Южная Америка
American [ə'merɪkən] американский
among [ə'mʌŋ] среди, между
amount [ə'maʊnt] количество
ancient ['eɪnfənt] древний
anorak ['ænəræk] тёплая куртка
answer ['a:nsə] *n* ответ; *v* отвечать

Antarctic [æn'ta:kтика] Антарктика
anteater 21 ['ænt,i:tə] муравьед
appear [ə'pri:e] появляться
applaud [ə'plɔ:d] аплодировать
applause [ə'plɔ:z] аплодисменты
apricot 20 ['eiprikɔt] абрикос
Arctic Ocean, the [,a:ktik 'ɛuʃn] Северный Ледовитый океан
area ['eəgə] площадь, пространство
argue 14 ['a:gju:] спорить
argument 14 ['a:gjumənt] спор
aristocrat ['ærɪstəkræt] аристократ
armed forces [,a:md 'fɔ:siz] вооруженные силы
arrival [ə'taivəl] прибытие
arrive at/in [ə'taiv] прибывать в
article ['a:tikl] 1. статья 2. artikel
Asia ['eɪʃə] Азия
ask [a:sk] спрашивать, просить, приглашать
to ask for sth просить что-то
Atlantic Ocean, the [ət,læntik 'ɛuʃn] Атлантический океан
attract 8 [ə'trækt] привлекать
attraction 16 [ə'trækʃn] привлекательность
attractive 8 [ə'trækтив] привлекательный
audience ['ɔ:djəns] аудитория, зрители
Australia [ɒ'streɪliə] Австралия
automobile ['ɔ:təməbi:l] автомобиль
avenue 9 ['ævənju:] проспект

B

baker ['beikə] булочник
at the baker's в булочной
bank 10 [bæŋk] берег (реки)
bar [ba:] кусок, бруск
a bar of chocolate плитка шоколада, шоколадный батончик

barometer 1 [bə'tomɪtə] барометр
basic ['beɪsɪk] основной, главный
basic course основной курс
battle ['bætl] битва, сражение
beach 16 [bi:tʃ] пляж
beauty ['bju:tɪ] красота, красавица
bee [bi:] пчела
belong to sb/sth [bɪ'lɒŋ] принадлежать кому-то/чему-то
below [bɪ'ləʊ] вниз, ниже
Berlin [bɜ: 'lin] Берлин
berry (pl berries) 20 ['bɛri] ягода
besides [bɪ'saɪdz] кроме того
between [bɪ'twi:n] между
bill 17 [bil] 1. счёт 2. законопроект
birth [bɜ:θ] рождение
date of birth дата рождения
birthplace (place of birth) 8 место рождения
bit (a bit) 5 [bit] немного, чуть-чуть
a little bit немного
bitter ['bitə] горький
It's bitter cold! Ужасно холодно!
blossom ['blɒsəm] цвет, цветок
to be in blossom быть в цвету
blow (blew, blown) [bləʊ] дуть
board [bɔ:d] борт
on board the ship на борту корабля
boat [bəʊt] лодка, корабль
to go boating кататься на лодке
bonfire ['bɒn,faiə] большой костёр
bonny ['bɒni] красивый
book [bʊk] n книга; v бронировать, заказывать
boring ['bɔ:riŋ] скучный
borrow 18 ['bɒrəʊ] 1. занимать, брать на время 2. заимствовать (слова)
both [bəʊθ] оба

bottle [ˈbɒtl] бутылка
bowl [bəʊl] миска, глубокая тарелка
branch [bræntʃ] ветка, ветвь
brave [breɪv] храбрый
bravery [ˈbreɪvəni] храбрость
break (broke, broken) [breɪk] ломать, разбивать
to break a law нарушать закон
breathe [briːð] дышать
to breathe in/out вдыхать/выдыхать
breeze [briːz] лёгкий ветерок, бриз
brief 14 [briːf] краткий, сжатый
bright [braɪt] яркий
brush up ['brʌʃ'ʌp] освежать в памяти
bucket ['bʌkɪt] ведро
buffalo 21 ['bʌfləʊ] буйвол, бизон
burn (burnt, burnt) [bɜːn] гореть
bury (buried) ['berɪ] хоронить
bush 21 [buʃ] 1. куст 2. лесистая местность Австралии
to beat about the bush ходить вокруг да около
busy 21 ['bʊsi] покрытый кустарником
busy ['bɪzɪ] 1. занятой 2. оживлённый
a busy street 13 оживлённая улица
a busy town многолюдный город
butcher ['butʃə] мясник
at the butcher's в мясном магазине (отделе)

calm 1 [kaːm] тихий, спокойный
can 5 [kæn] n консервная банка;
v консервировать
Canada [kænədə] Канада
canal [kə'næl] канал
Canberra ['kænbərə] Канберра
canoe 16 [kə'nuː] n каноэ
capital ['kæpɪtl] столица
cardboard 3 ['ka:dboːd] картон
care [keə] забота
to take care of sb/sth заботиться о ком-л./чём-л.
careful ['keəfl] осторожный, внимательный
carefully ['keəflɪ] осторожно, внимательно
careless ['keəlɪs] беспечный, неосторожный
carelessly ['keəlɪslɪ] неосторожно
carry ['kæri] носить
carry mail перевозить почту
castle ['kæsl] замок
cathedral 14 [kə'θiːdrəl] собор
cause 4 [kɔːz] быть причиной, вызывать
caviar(e) ['kævɪə] икра
Celt [kelt] кельт
Celtic ['keltɪk] кельтский
celebrate ['selɪbreɪt] праздновать
celebration [,selɪ'bretɪn] празднование
century ['sentʃərɪ] век
ceremony 9 ['serɪməni] церемония
certain ['sɜːtn] определённый, некоторый
certainly ['sɜːtnlɪ] конечно
chain 16 [tʃeɪn] цепь, цепочка
chance 18 [tʃɑːns] шанс
change [tʃeɪnðʒ] 1. (из)меняться
2. менять
changeable 1 ['tʃeɪnðʒəbl] непостоянный, изменчивый
character 9 ['kærəktə] герой (книги, фильма)
cheap [tʃiːp] дешёвый
check (up) ['tsek 'ʌp] проверять
check-in ['tsek'ɪn] n регистрация; v регистрироваться

cabinet 17 ['kæbɪnɪt] кабинет министров
California [,kæli'fɔːniə] Калифорния

cheetah ['tʃi:tə] гепард
chemist ['kemist] аптекарь
at the **chemist's** в аптеке
chest [t'fest] грудная клетка
Chicago [ʃi'ka:gəʊ] Чикаго
chicken (chick) ['tʃɪkɪn] цыплёнок
China ['tʃaɪnə] Китай
choice [tʃɔɪs] выбор
choose (chose, chosen) [tʃu:z] выбирать
Christian ['krɪstʃən] христианин
Christmas ['krɪsməs] Рождество
circle ['sɜ:kəl] обводить кругом
circus ['sɜ:kəs] *n* цирк; *adj* цирковой
citizen 17 ['sɪtɪzn] гражданин
citrus 20 ['sɪtrəs] *n* цитрус; *adj* цитрусовый
classical 9 ['klæsɪkl] классический
clear 5 [kli:e] *v* чистить, расчищать; *adj* ясный
climate ['klaɪmɪt] климат
climatic 2 [klaɪ'mætɪk] климатический
climb [klaɪm] залезать, взбираться
climber 14 ['klaɪmə] альпинист
close [kləʊz] закрывать
cloud [klaʊd] облако
coast 2 [kəʊst] побережье
cockatoo 21 [,kɒkə'tu:] какаду
coffee ['kɒfi] кофе
 coffee maker кофеварка
coin [kɔɪn] монета
colonist ['kɒlənist] колонист, житель колонии
colony ['kɒləni] колония
colour ['kʌlə] цвет
coloured ['kʌləd] раскрашенный, цветной
colourful ['kʌləfl] красочный, яркий
comfortable ['kʌmfətəbl] удобный
common ['kɒmən] обычный
commonly ['kɒmənlɪ] обычно
 least/most commonly used на-

именее/наиболее часто используемое
company ['kʌmpəni] компания
compare [kəm'peə] сравнивать, сравнять
compass ['kʌmpəs] компас
complete [kəm'pli:t] заканчивать
compound ['kʌmpaʊnd] сложное слово
concentrate 13 ['kɒnsəntreɪt] сосредоточивать(ся)
conference ['kɒnfərəns] конференция
congress 17 ['kɒŋgrɛs] конгресс, съезд
congressman 17 ['kɒŋgrɛsmən] конгрессмен, член конгресса
congresswoman 17 ['kɒŋgrɛswmən] женщина-конгрессмен
connect [kə'nekt] соединять, связывать
conservative [kən'sɜ:vətɪv] консервативный
consist (of) [kən'sist] состоять (из)
consonant ['kɒnsənənt] согласная
constant 21 ['kɒnstənt] постоянный
constitution 17 [,kɒnsti'tju:sn] конституция
consult [kən'salt] консультировать
continent ['kɒntɪnənt] континент
continental [,kɒnti'nentl] относящийся к материку
continue [kən'tinju:] продолжать
contrast 13 ['kɒntrə:st] контраст, противоположность
control 9 [kən'trəʊl] *n* контроль; *v* контролировать
convenient [kən'vei:njənt] удобный
conversation [,kɒnvə'seɪʃn] беседа
cook [kʊk] готовить
cool [ku:l] прохладный, свежий
cooperation 5 [kəʊ,ɒp're'teɪʃn] сотрудничество, кооперация
corresponding [,kɒrɪ'spɒndɪŋ] соответствующий

cost (**cost, cost**) [kɒst] стоить
countable ['kaʊntəbl] исчисляемое

country ['kʌntri] 1. страна 2. деревня, сельская местность
in the country за городом

court [kɔ:t] суд

cover ['kʌvə] *n* обложка, покрытие; *v* покрывать

creature 3 ['krɪ:tʃə] создание, живое существо

criminal 10 ['krɪmɪnl] *n* преступник; *adj* преступный

crisis 5 ['kraɪsɪs] кризис

crocodile ['krɒkədail] крокодил

crow [krəʊ] ворона

crowd 18 [kraʊd] толпа

crown 9 [kraʊn] корона, короновать

cuckoo ['kuku:] кукушка

culture ['kʌltʃə] культура

cure 3 [kjue] лечить

curious 21 ['kjьюərɪəs] любопытный, любознательный

custom ['kʌstəm] обычай

customs ['kʌstəmz] таможня
at the customs на таможне

customs officer таможенник

cut (**cut, cut**) [kʌt] резать
cut down срубить

D

daffodil ['dæfədɪl] нарцисс

daily 1 ['deili] ежедневный

dairy ['deəri] молочный

dairy products ['deəri 'prɒdʌktz]
молочные продукты

damage 3 ['dæmɪdʒ] повреждать

dandelion ['dændlɪən] одуванчик

danger ['deindʒə] опасность

dangerous ['deindʒrəs] опасный

daughter ['dɔ:tə] дочь

day [dei] день

the day before yesterday позавчера

day off выходной день

the other day на днях

dead [ded] мёртвый

decision 17 [di'sɪʒn] решение

declare 17 [di'kleə] заявлять

deep [di:p] глубокий

deer 10 [dɪə] олень, олени

defeat 9 [di'fi:t] *n* поражение; *v* побеждать, разбивать

definite ['defɪnit] определенный

definitely ['defɪnɪtlɪ] определенно

delay [di'leɪ] *n* задержка; *v* задерживать(ся), опаздывать

delight [dɪ'lait] восторг

democratic [,demə'krætɪk] демократический

denote [di'nəʊt] обозначать

department [di'pa:tment] отдел

department store [di'pa:tment 'sto:] универмаг

departure [di'pa:tʃə] отправление

desert 16 ['dezət] пустыня

dessert [dɪ'zɜ:t] десерт

destroy 3 [di'strɔɪ] разрушать

destruction 4 [di'strʌkʃn] разрушение, уничтожение

detailed ['di:teɪld] детальный

develop [di'veləp] развивать

devoted to sb [di'vəʊtɪd] преданный кому-л.

devotion 13 [di'vəʊʃn] преданность

dictionary ['dɪkʃənri] словарь

differ ['dɪfə] отличаться

difference ['dɪfrəns] отличие

different ['dɪfrənt] различный

dime [daɪm] монета в 10 центов

dingo 21 ['dɪŋgə] динго (дикая собака)

disagree [,dɪsə'grɪ:] не соглашаться

disappear [,dɪsə'piə] исчезать

disaster 5 [di'za:stə] бедствие, несчастье

discover [dis'kʌvə] открывать

discuss [dɪ'skʌs] обсуждать

dislike [dɪs'laɪk] не любить
divide [dɪ'veɪd] делить
documentary [,dɒkju'mentəri] документальный
dolphin ['dɒlfɪn] дельфин
doubt [daʊt] сомнение
dove [dəʊv] голубка
drama ['dra:mə] драма
dress circle [,dres 'sɜːkl] бельэтаж
dressmaker ['dres,meɪkə] портной, портниха
duckbill 21 ['dʌkbɪl] утконос
dull [dʌl] скучный
dump 4 [dʌmp] *п* свалка; *в* выбрасывать на свалку
duty ['dju:tɪ] долг, обязанность

E

earn 10 [ɜːn] зарабатывать
to earn one's living зарабатывать на жизнь
east [i:st] восток
eat (ate, eaten) [eit] есть
to eat in/out есть дома/вне дома (в кафе, ресторане и т. д.)
echidna 21 [ɪ'kɪdnə] ехидна
ecology [ɪ'kɒlədʒi] экология
educated 18 ['edju:kɪtid] образованный
education [,edju:'keɪʃn] образование
effect 2 [ɪ'fekt] эффект, воздействие
elbow ['elbəʊ] локоть
elect [ɪ'lekt] избирать, выбирать
election 17 [ɪ'lekn̩] выборы
electricity [,ɪlek'trisɪti] электричество
emblem ['embl̩əm] эмблема
emperor ['empərə] император
empire 9 ['empaɪə] империя
emu 21 ['i:mju:] эму (*вид страуса*)
encourage 18 [ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ] поощрять, вдохновлять

end 17 [end] кончать
endanger 3 [ɪn'deɪndʒə] подвергать опасности
endless 16 ['endlis] бесконечный
energy 5 ['enədʒi] энергия, сила
enjoy [ɪn'dʒɔɪ] получать удовольствие
enough [ɪ'nʌf] достаточно
enter 14 ['entə] 1. входить 2. поступать в учебное заведение
enumerate [ɪ'nju:təreɪt] пронумеровать, перечислить
environment 4 [ɪn'veɪərənmənt] окружающая среда
environmental 4 [ɪn'veɪərənl'ment] относящийся к окружающей среде
escape 21 [ɪ'skeɪp] убегать, избегать
especially [ɪ'speʃəli] особенно
eucalyptus 21 [ju:kə'lɪptəs] эвкалипт
Europe [juəgəp] Европа
European [juəgə'rɪ:pɪ:ən] европейский
event 18 [ɪ'vent] событие
exact 10 [ɪg'zækt] точный
exactly 10 [ɪg'zæktlɪ] точно, как раз
except 20 [ɪk'sept] кроме
excite 8 [ɪk'saɪt] волновать
excited 8 [ɪk'saɪtid] взволнованный
exciting 8 [ɪk'saɪtɪŋ] волнующий
exhibition [,eksi'bɪʃn] выставка
exist [ɪg'zist] существовать
expect [ɪk'spekt] ожидать
expensive [ɪk'spensɪv] дорогой, дорогостоящий
exploration [,eksplə'reɪʃn] исследование
explore [ɪk'splɔ:] исследовать
express [ɪk'spres] выражать
extinct 3 [ɪk'stɪŋkt] вымерший
extra ['ekstrə] дополнительный
extraordinary 21 [ɪk'stri:dɪ:nəri] необычный
extremely 21 [ɪk'stri:mlɪ] чрезвычайно, крайне

F

factory ['fækτəri] фабрика
fall (fell, fallen) [fɔ:l] падать
false [fɔ:ls] неверный
famous for sth ['feiməs] известный чём-то
far [fa:] далёкий
not far from не далеко от
the Far East Дальний Восток
faraway 18 [,fa:rə'wei] дальний, далёкий
farm [fa:m] *n* ферма; *v* обрабатывать землю
farmland 16 ['fa:mlænd] земля, пригодная для сельскохозяйственных работ; угодья
fat [fæt] толстый, жирный
fawn [fɔ:n] оленёнок
feel (felt, felt) [fi:l] чувствовать
to feel bad чувствовать себя плохо
to feel like doing sth иметь желание что-то сделать
fence [fens] изгородь, забор
festival ['festivəl] фестиваль
field [fi:ld] 1. поле 2. отрасль
filter 4 ['filtə] фильтр
find (found, found) [faɪnd] найти
find out найти; выяснить
fir tree ['fɜ:'tri:] ель
flat 8 [flæt] плоский
flour ['flaʊə] мука
flower ['flaʊə] цветок
fluent 14 ['flu:ənt] быстрый, беглый (о языке)
fog [fɒg] туман
foggy ['fɒgɪ] туманный
folk [fəʊk] народный
follow ['fɒləʊ] следовать
following ['fɒləʊɪŋ] следующий
fond [fɒnd] любящий
to be fond of sth/sb любить что-то/кого-то
to be fond of doing sth любить делать что-то

foolish ['fu:lɪʃ] глупый
forecast 1 ['fɔ:ka:st] *n* прогноз (погоды); *v* (forecast/forecast-ed) предсказывать погоду, прогнозировать
foreign ['fɔ:gɪn] иностранный
former ['fɔ:rmə] бывший
found [faʊnd] основывать
founded ['faʊndɪd] основанный
to be founded быть основанным
fountain ['faʊntɪn] фонтан
fragile 2 ['frædʒɪl] хрупкий, слабый
France [fra:ns] Франция
free [fri:] свободный, бесплатный
freeze (froze, frozen) [fri:z] замёрзнуть, заморозить
It's freezing! Морозит!
frequently ['fri:kwəntli] часто
fresh [fref] свежий
frog [frɒg] лягушка
fruit [fru:t] фрукт, фрукты
fry [frai] жарить
fuel ['fju:əl] топливо, горючее

G

Gaelic ['geɪlik] гээльский (язык)
gallery ['gælərɪ] 1. галерея
2. балкон, галерка
gas [gæs] газ
general ['dʒenərəl] генерал
generally 20 ['dʒenərəli] обычно, как правило
gentleman ['dʒentlmən] джентльмен
Germany ['dʒɜ:tməni] Германия
get (got, got) [get] получать, доставать
get along уживаться, ладить
get away удрать, исчезнуть
get down to work приняться за работу
get in/out входить/выходить
get on with sb ладить с кем-л.

get into a car сесть в машину
get out of a car выйти из машины
get over преодолевать
get on a train (bus) сесть на поезд (автобус)
get off a train (bus) сойти с поезда (автобуса)
get up вставать
get ready приготовиться
get together собираться
ghost [gəʊst] призрак, привидение
giant ['dʒaɪənt] *n* великан; *adj* гигантский
give (gave, given) 20 [gɪv] давать
give away отдавать, дарить
give back возвращать
give a call to sb звонить кому-л.
give out раздавать
give up 1. отказаться; бросить, перестать заниматься 2. отказаться от
global 5 ['gləʊbl] мировой, всемирный
glove-maker 10 ['glʌv,meɪkə] перчаточник
go (went, gone) [gəʊ] идти, ехать
go in for sports заниматься спортом
go on telling sth продолжать рассказывать что-л.
graceful 21 ['greɪfl] грациозный, изящный
grass [gra:s] трава
grassland ['gra:s�end] пастбище
grave 13 [greɪv] могила
great [greɪt] 1. великий 2. потрясающий, отличный
great-grandparents 16 [,greɪt-'grænd,peərənts] прабабушка и прадедушка
greengrocer ['grɪ:n,g्रeʊsə] зеленщик, продавец отдела «овощи-фрукты»
at the greengrocer's в магазине (отделе) «овощи-фрукты»

greenhouse 2 ['grɪ:nhaʊs] теплица, парник
greenhouse effect 2 ['grɪ:nhaʊs i,fekt] парниковый эффект
greetings ['gri:tɪŋz] приветствие
greetings card поздравительная открытка
grocer ['grəʊsə] бакалейщик
at the grocer's в бакалейном отделе
grow (grew, grown) [grəʊ] расти
grown-up 21 ['grəʊnʌpər] взрослый
grow up 21 ['grəʊ 'ʌp] расти, увеличиваться
guarantee [,gærən'ti:] гарантировать, ручаться
guess [ges] догадываться

H

habitat 3 ['hæbitæt] среда обитания
Halloween [,hæləu'ni:n] канун Дня всех святых
hang (hung, hung) [hæŋ] вешать
hardly ['hɑ:dli] едва, почти
hardly ever ['hɑ:dli 'evə] очень редко, почти никогда
harm [ha:m] вред
to do (a lot of) harm причинять (много) вред(а)
harvest ['ha:vist] урожай, сбор урожая
hate [heɪt] *n* ненависть; *v* ненавидеть
haughty ['hɔ:ti] надменный, высокомерный
have/have got (has/has got) [hæv] ([hæz]) иметь
have to/have got to (has to/has got to) do sth 14 иметь необходимость сделать что-то
headline ['hedlain] заголовок
hear (heard, heard) [hɪə] слышать
heat 2 [hɪ:t] жара

hedge 8 [hedʒ] изгородь (живая)
helper 17 ['helpə] помощник
hemisphere ['hemi,sfɪə] полуши-
арие
hide (hid, hidden) [haɪd] прятать-
ся
high [hai] *adj* высокий; *adv* вы-
соко
highlands 8 ['haɪləndz] нагорье;
горная, высокогорная мест-
ность
hill [hil] холм
hold (held, held) [həʊld] держать
hole [həʊl] нора; яма
holiday ['hɒlɪdeɪ] 1. праздник
2. каникулы
holidaymaker 8 ['hɒlɪdeɪ,meɪkə] ту-
рист, отдыхающий
holly ['hɒli] остролист
honest ['ɒnɪst] честный
honesty 18 ['ɒnɪsti] честность
honey ['həni] мёд
Hoorah! 5 [hu'reɪ] Ура!
hop [hɒp] хмель
hope [həʊp] надеяться
horn [hɔ:n] рог, рожок
horror ['hɔ:gə] ужас
horse [hɔ:s] лошадь
horseback 18 ['hɔ:sbæk] спина ло-
шади
on horseback верхом
huge 2 [hju:dʒ] огромный, гигант-
ский
human 2 ['hju:mən] *n* человек;
adj человеческий
humble ['hʌmlɪ] скромный, за-
стенчивый, робкий
humid 20 ['hju:mid] влажный
humorist ['hju:mərɪst] юморист
hundred ['hʌndrəd] сто
hurt (hurt, hurt) [hɜ:t] 1. болеть
2. причинять боль

J

ice [ais] лёд
Iceland ['aɪslənd] Исландия

icy 20 ['aɪsɪ] ледяной
imagination [ɪ,maɪdʒɪ'neɪʃn] вооб-
ражение
imagine [ɪ'mædʒɪn] представить,
вообразить
immediately [ɪ'mi:diətlɪ] немед-
ленно
impossible [ɪm'ɒpsəbl] невозмож-
ный
include [ɪn'klu:d] включать
incomplete [,ɪnkəm'plɪ:t] непол-
ный
indefinite [ɪn'defənɪt] неопределен-
ный
independence (from sb) [,ɪndi-'pendəns] независимость (от
кого-л.)
independent [,ɪndi'pendənt] неза-
висимый
India ['ɪndiə] Индия
Indian Ocean, the [,ɪndiən 'əʊʃn]
Индийский океан
industrial [ɪn'dastryəl] промыш-
ленный
industry ['ɪndəstri] промышлен-
ность
inexpressive [,ɪnɪk'spresɪv] невы-
разительный
influence 2 ['ɪnfluəns] *n* влияние;
v влиять на кого-л.
to have an influence on sb оказы-
вать влияние на кого-л.
informal [ɪn'fɔ:ml] неофициаль-
ный
information [,ɪnfə'meɪʃn] сведения
inhabit 20 [ɪn'hæbit] населять
inhabited 20 [ɪn'hæbitɪd] насе-
лённый
inhospitable [ɪn'hɒspɪtəbl] негосте-
приимный
injure 14 ['ɪndʒə] ранить, испор-
тить
injured 14 ['ɪndʒəd] раненый,
повреждённый
insect 3 ['ɪnsekt] насекомое
instead [ɪn'sted] вместо чего-л.
international 5 [,ɪntə'næʃnəl]
международный

interval [ˈintəvl] интервал
invent [ɪnˈvent] изобретать
invitation [,ɪnvɪˈteɪʃn] приглашение
invite [ɪnˈvait] приглашать
Ireland [ˈaɪələnd] Ирландия
Irish [ˈaɪərɪʃ] ирландский
irregular [ɪrɪgjʊlər] неправильный
Italy [ˈɪtəli] Италия

J

jacket [ˈdʒækɪt] куртка, жакет
jeans [dʒi:nz] джинсы
job [dʒɒb] работа
joke [dʒo:k] шутка
journey [ˈdʒɜ:ni] путешествие
to go on a journey отправиться в путешествие
judge 17 [dʒudʒ] *n* эксперт, знаток, судья; *v* судить, решать
just [dʒʌst] 1. только что 2. как раз

K

kangaroo 21 [,kæŋgə'ru:] кенгуру
keep (kept, kept) [ki:p] держать, содержать
to keep late hours поздно ложиться спать
kill [kil] убивать
king [kɪŋ] король
kingdom [ˈkɪŋdəm] королевство
knife (*pl* knives) [naif] ([naivz]) нож (ножи)
knock [nɒk] стучать
knowledge ['nɒlɪdʒ] знание, знания
koala 21 [kəʊ'ə:lə] коала
kookaburra 21 ['kʊkə,bʌrə] зимородок-хохотун

L

lady 18 ['leɪdi] леди, дама
lake [leɪk] озеро
land [lænd] *n* земля; суша; *v* приставать к берегу, приземляться
language ['læŋgwɪdʒ] язык
last [la:st] *adj* последний; *v* длиться
late [leɪt] поздний
to be late (for) опоздать (на)
lately ['leɪtlɪ] недавно, за последнее время
laugh (at) [la:f] смеяться (над)
law 10 [lɔ:] закон
lawmaker ['lɔ:,meɪkə] законодатель
lawn [lɔ:n] лужайка
lawyer ['lɔ:jə] юрист, адвокат
lay 21 (laid, laid) [lei] класть
to lay eggs откладывать яйца
to lay the table накрывать на стол
lazy ['leɪzɪ] ленивый
lead (led, led) [li:d] вести, руководить
leading 20 ['li:dɪŋ] ведущий, руководящий
leap year 17 ['le:p ˌjɪə] високосный год
least (the least) [li:st] наименьший
lecture ['lektʃə] лекция
leek [li:k] лук-порей
legend ['ledfənd] легенда
length [leŋθ] длина
lengthen ['leŋθən] удлинять
leopard ['lepəd] леопард
let (let, let) [let] позволять
to let sb do sth позволить кому-то сделать что-л.
liberty ['libəti] свобода
Liberty Island остров Свободы
the Statue of Liberty Статуя Свободы

M

lick [lɪk] лизать, облизывать
lie I (lay, lain) [laɪ] лежать
lie II [laɪ] *n* ложь; (*lied; lying*) *v*
лгать, говорить неправду
to tell a lie лгать, говорить не-
правду
life (*pl* *lives*) [laɪf] ([laɪvz]) жизнь
(жизни)
line [laɪn] 1. линия 2. направле-
ние (*о транспорте*)
to be lined with 13 быть об-
рамленным
lip [lɪp] губа
list [list] список
litter ['lɪtə] мусор
loaf (*pl* *loaves*) [ləʊf] ([ləʊvz]) бу-
ханка (буханки)
a loaf of bread буханка хле-
ба
local ['ləʊkl] местный, ближай-
ший к дому
logical ['lɒgɪkl] логический
lonely 20 ['ləʊnlɪ] одинокий
look 14 [lʊk] смотреть, выгля-
деть
to look after присматривать
to look around оглядываться
to look at смотреть на
to look for искать
to look like выглядеть
to look through просмотреть
to look up in sth посмотреть
что-л. (*в словаре*)
lord [lɔ:d] лорд
the House of Lords палата
lords (в британском парла-
менте)
Los Angeles [lɒs'ændʒəlɪz] Лос-
Анджелес
lose (*lost, lost*) [lu:z] терять
to be (get) lost потеряться, за-
блудиться
lowlands 8 ['ləʊləndz] низмен-
ность
lucky ['lʌki] везучий, удачливый
lung [laŋ] лёгкое
lynx [lɪŋks] рысь
lyrebird ['laɪəbɜ:d] лирохвост

magic ['mædʒɪk] волшебный
mail [meɪl] почта
majesty ['mædʒɪsti] величество
His/Her Majesty Его/Её вели-
чество
major ['meɪdʒə] майор
make (*made, made*) 21 [meɪk] де-
лать, заставлять
to be made of/from быть сде-
ланным из
to make sb do sth заставлять
кого-л. делать *что-л.*
make off быстро уйти, убе-
жать
make out разобраться, понять
с трудом
make up составлять
mammal 3 ['mæmətl] млекопита-
ющее
mark [ma:k] оценка
married ['mærɪd] женатый, за-
мужняя
to be/get married to состоять
в браке/вступать в брак
marry ['mæri] жениться (*на ком-*
то), выходить замуж (*за кого-*
то)
material [mæ'tɪərɪəl] материал
matter ['mætə] дело, вопрос
no matter how 17 неважно
как
meadow 8 ['medəʊ] луг
meaning ['mi:nɪŋ] значение
means (*of transport*) [mi:nz] сред-
ства передвижения
measure 18 ['meʒə] *n* мера, еди-
ница измерения; *v* измерять,
мерить
medicine ['medsin] 1. медицина
(неисчисл.); 2. лекарство (*ис-
числ.*)
melt 16 [melt] таять, раство-
ряться
melting pot 1. тигель 2. мес-
то, где собираются и живут

вместе представители различных рас и национальностей

member ['membə] член

memorial [mə'mɔ:gɪəl] мемориал

memory ['meməri] память

mention ['menʃn] упоминать

merry ['meri] весёлый

mess 5 [mes] беспорядок, путаница

message ['mesɪdʒ] устное сообщение

metal ['metl] металл

mighty 16 ['maɪtɪ] мощный

mild [maɪld] мягкий

military 13 ['mɪlitəri] военный

militia 18 [mi'lɪə] милиция

militiaman [mi'lɪjəmən] милиционер

million ['miljən] миллион

millionaire [,miljə'neə] миллионер

mineral ['mɪnərəl] минерал

ministry ['ministrɪ] министерство

miss sb [mis] 1. скучать по кому-л.

2. пропустить, опоздать
Miss [mis] мисс (замужняженщина)

Mississippi, the [,misi'sipi] Миссисипи (река)

mist 1 [mist] туман, дымка

misty 1 ['misti] туманный

mix [miks] мешать, смешивать

mixed [mikst] перемешанный

mixture 16 ['mɪkstʃə] 1. смесь

2. микстура

modest 13 ['mɒdist] скромный

moment ['məʊmənt] мгновение

monarch 9 ['mənək] монарх

monument to sb ['mɒnjumənt]

памятник кому-л.

motherland ['mʌðələnd] родина, отчизна

mother tongue [,mʌðə 'taŋ] родной язык

mountain ['maʊntin] гора

Mr ['mɪstə] мистер

Mrs ['mɪsɪz] миссис (замужняженщина)

Ms [mɪz] госпожа (неизвестно, замужем или нет)

museum [mju:'zi:əm] музей

music ['mju:zɪk] музыка

musical ['mju:zɪkəl] adj музыкальный; n музыкальный фильм

mysterious [mɪ'stiərɪəs] таинственный

mystery ['mɪstəri] тайна

N

narrator [nə'reɪtə] рассказчик

nasty ['na:sti] отвратительный

nation ['neɪʃn] нация

national ['næʃnəl] национальный

nationality [,næʃə'nælti] национальность

native ['neitiv] коренной (житель), родной (язык, город)

natural ['nætʃrəl] естественный

naturally 20 ['nætʃrəli] естественно

nature ['neɪtʃə] природа

nearly 20 ['niəli] почти

necessary ['nesesəri] необходимый

neighbour ['neɪbə] сосед

New York [,nju: 'jɔ:k] Нью-Йорк

New Zealand [nju: 'zi:lənd] Новая Зеландия

nickel ['nɪkl] монета в пять центов

nickname ['nɪkneɪm] прозвище

nod [nɒd] n кивок; v кивать головой

noise [noɪz] шум

noisy ['nɔɪzɪ] шумный

normal ['nɔ:ml] нормальный

north [nɔ:θ] север

northeast [,nɔ:θ'eɪst] северо-восток

northwest [,nɔ:θ'west] северо-запад

note [nəʊt] заметка

nothing ['nʌθɪŋ] ничего

notice 21 ['nəʊtɪs] *n* объявление;
v замечать
nowadays [naʊə'deɪz] в настоящее
время
nuclear 4 ['nju:klaɪə] ядерный
nuclear weapons 4 [,nju:klaɪə
'wepənz] ядерное оружие
number 17 ['nʌmbə] 1. число
2. количество

O

oak [əʊk] дуб
obey 17 [ə'beɪ] повиноваться,
слушаться
obligation [,ɒbli'geɪʃn] обязатель-
ство
occasionally [ə'keɪʒnəlɪ] время от
времени
occupation [,ɒkjup'reɪʃn] занятие,
профессия
occupy 20 ['ɒkjuprə] занимать
(место)
ocean ['əʊʃn] океан
offend [ə'fend] обижать
offer ['ɒfə] предлагать
office ['ɒfɪs] офис, госучрежде-
ние, кабинет
official 9 [ə'fiʃl] *n* государствен-
ный служащий; *adj* офици-
альный
oil [ɔɪl] 1. растительное масло
2. нефть
only ['əʊnlɪ] только
(the) **only** 20 единственный
opera ['ɒpərə] опера
operetta [,ɒpə'retə] оперетта
opinion [ə'pɪnjən] мнение
orange ['ɒrɪndʒ] апельсин
orange juice апельсиновый
сок
order ['ɔ:də] порядок
origin ['ɔ:rɪdʒɪn] происхождение
ostrich ['ɒstrɪtʃ] страус
other ['ʌðə] другой, другие
the other day на днях

the other way round наобо-
рот
ought (to) [ɔ:t] быть должным,
морально обязанным
outline ['aʊtlain] план (расска-
за)
outloud ['aʊtləud] вслух
own 9 [əvn] *adj* собственный; *v*
владеть
ozone 4 ['əʊzəʊn] *n* озон; *adj* озо-
новый

P

Pacific Ocean, the [pə,sifik 'əʊʃn]
Тихий океан
packet ['pækɪt] пакет, пачка
paint [peɪnt] *n* краска; *v* рисо-
вать красками
painting ['peɪntɪŋ] картина
pajamas (pyjamas) [pə'fɜ:əməz]
пижама
palace ['pælis] дворец
panther ['pænθə] пантера
paper ['peɪpə] 1. бумага 2. газета
papers ['peɪpəz] 1. газеты, жур-
налы 2. документы
parliament ['pa:ləmənt] парла-
мент
pass [pɑ:s] передавать
passenger ['pæsɪnɟə] пассажир
passport 14 ['pa:spɔ:t] паспорт
path 14 [pa:θ] тропинка
pay (for sth) (paid, paid) [pei]
платить (за что-л.)
peach 20 [pi:tʃ] персик
pear 20 [peə] груша
perform [pə'fɔ:m] представлять,
играть
performance [pə'fɔ:məns] пред-
ставление, спектакль
performer [pə'fɔ:mə] исполнитель
periodical [,pɪədɪk'adɪkl] периоди-
ческое издание (журнал, газе-
та и т. д.)

- permanent** ['pɜːmənənt] постоянный
person ['pɜːsn] человек, личность
personal ['pɜːsnl] личный
personally 5 ['pɜːsnəlɪ] лично, сам
petal ['petl] лепесток
phrase [frefz] фраза
picnicer 5 ['pɪknɪkə] участник пикника
picturesque 13 [,pɪktʃə'resk] живописный
piece [pi:s] кусок
pigeon 3 ['rɪfʒn] голубь
pile 5 [paɪl] *n* куча, груда; *v* сваливать в кучу
pirate 8 ['paɪərət] пират
plain 8 [plein] равнина
plantation [plæn'teɪʃn] плантация
planter ['pla:ntə] плантатор
pleasant ['pleznt] приятный
please 10 [pli:z] доставлять удовольствие
as you please как вам хочется
pleased 10 [pli:zd] получивший удовольствие
pleasure ['plezə] удовольствие
poem ['rəʊɪm] стихотворение, поэма
poison 4 ['rɔɪzn] *n* яд; *v* отравить
polite [pə'lait] вежливый
politician [,poli'tɪʃn] политик
politics 9 ['polɪtɪks] политика
pollute 4 [pə'lut] загрязнять
pollution 4 [pə'lju:ʃn] загрязнение
population 4 [,pɒpjʊ'leɪʃn] население
portrait ['pɔːtrɪt] портрет
position 8 [pə'zɪʃn] положение, позиция
possible ['pɒsɪbl] возможный
post office ['pəʊst ,ɒfɪs] почта
pound [paʊnd] 1. фунт (единица веса, 450 г) 2. фунт стерлингов (английская денежная единица)
poverty 18 ['pɒvətɪ] бедность, нужда
- power** ['paʊə] власть
practice (in) ['præktsɪs] практиковаться (в)
praise 5 [preɪz] *n* похвала; *v* хвалить
president ['prezɪdənt] президент
Press, the 17 [pres] пресса
pretend [prɪ'tend] притворяться
pretty ['prɪti] *adj* хорошенъкий; *adv* весьма
previous ['prɪviəs] предыдущий
price [praɪs] цена
primitive 21 ['prɪmitɪv] 1. первобытный 2. примитивный
prince [prɪns] принц, князь
princess [prɪn'ses] принцесса
private 18 ['praɪvɪt] частный, личный
prize [praɪz] приз
probably ['prəbəbli] возможно
problem ['prɒbləm] проблема
procession 9 [prə'seʃn] процесия
produce 2 [prə'dju:s] производить
profession [prə'feʃn] профессия
professor [prə'fesə] профессор
progressive [prə'gresɪv] прогрессивный
promise ['prɒmɪs] обещать
pronunciation [prə'nʌnsɪ,eɪʃn] произношение
proper ['prɔːpə] соответствующий
prosperous 13 ['prɒsprərəs] процветающий
protect [prə'tekt] защищать
prove [pru:v] доказывать
proverb ['prɒvəzb] пословица
public 9 ['pləblɪk] *n* публика; *adj* общественный
punish ['plʌnɪʃ] наказывать
punishment ['plʌnɪʃmənt] наказание
pure [pju:e] чистый
purple ['pɜːpl] фиолетовый
push 18 [puʃ] толкать
put (put, put) [put] класть
put down записывать
put on sth надевать что-л.

Q

- qualification** [,kwɔ:lifi'keɪʃn] квалификация
quarrel ['kwɔ:rəl] ссориться
quarter ['kwɔ:tə] 1. четверть
 2. монета в 25 центов
queen [kwi:n] королева
quiet ['kwaɪət] спокойный, тихий
quiz [kwɪz] 1. викторина; 2. проверочная работа
spelling quiz словарный диктант
quotation [kwəʊ'teɪʃn] цитата
quote [kwəʊt] цитировать

R

- rabbit** 21 ['ræbɪt] кролик
radiation 4 [,reidi'eɪʃn] радиация
radio ['reɪdiəʊ] радио
rain [reɪn] дождь
It often rains here. Здесь часто идёт дождь.
It is raining hard now. Сейчас идёт сильный дождь.
rainbow ['reɪnbəʊ] радуга
raincoat ['reɪnkəʊt] дождевик, плащ от дождя
rainforest ['reɪnfɔ:rist] тропический лес
rainstorm 1 ['reinstɔ:m] ливень
rainy ['reini] дождливый
rat 21 [ræt] крыса
raven ['reɪvn] ворон
react [ri:'ækɪt] реагировать
reason 9 ['ri:zn] причина
receive [ri'si:v] 1. получать
 2. принимать (людей)
recently ['ri:sntli] недавно
recognize ['rekəgnائز] узнавать
recover [rɪ'kʌvə] поправиться
refer [rɪ'fɜ:] относить, отсылать
reference material ['refrəns mə'tɪərɪəl] справочный материал

- referring (to)** [rɪ'fɜ:riŋ] относящийся (к)
refuse [rɪ'fju:z] отказывать(ся)
region ['rɪ:dʒən] регион
regularly ['regjʊlərlɪ] регулярно
reign 9 [reɪn] *n* царствование; *v* царствовать
relation [rɪ'leɪʃn] родственник
relative ['relətɪv] родственник
relax [rɪ'læks] расслабляться
relaxation [,rɪ'læk'seɪʃn] расслабление, отдых
religion 17 [rɪ'lɪdʒən] религия
remember [rɪ'membə] помнить
remind (of) 9 [rɪ'maind] напоминать (о)
represent 17 [,reprɪ'zent] представлять
representative 17 [,reprɪ'zentətɪv] представительный
reptile 3 ['reptail] рептилия
rescue 14 ['reskjue:] *n* спасение; *v* спасать, избавлять
resemble 21 [rɪ'zembl] быть похожим
residence 9 ['rezidəns] резиденция
resource 4 [rɪ'sɔ:s] средства, ресурсы
respect 18 [rɪ'spekt] уважать
respectable [rɪ'spektəbl] уважаемый
rest [rest] *n* отдых; *v* отдохнуть
the rest of 8 остальные
retell [,ri:'tel] пересказывать
retire 18 [rɪ'taɪə] увольняться, уходить в отставку (на пенсию)
review [rɪ'veju:] повторять
ride (rode, ridden) [raɪd] ехать на (велосипеде, лошади)
rise (rose, risen) [raɪz] вставать, подниматься
rock 13 [rɒk] скала
row [rəʊ] гребсти
royal ['rɔ:jl] королевский
rubbish ['rʌbiʃ] мусор, бытовые отходы

ruin ['ru:in] разрушать
ruins ['ru:inz] руины
rule 8 [ru:l] *n* правило; *v* пра-
вить, управлять
as a rule как правило
ruler 8 ['ru:lə] 1. правитель
2. линейка

S

saint (snt., st.) [seint] ([snt]) свя-
той
salesman ['seilzmən] продавец
salty ['sɔ:lti] солёный
sand 20 [sænd] песок
sandals ['sændəlz] босоножки
sandwich ['sænwɪtʃ] бутерброд
sandy 20 ['sændi] песчаный
San Francisco [,sænfrən'siskəʊ]
Сан-Франциско
savanna(h) 3 [sə'vænə] саванна
save [seiv] 1. спасать 2. эконо-
мить, откладывать
scenery 8 ['si:nəri] декорации
science ['saɪəns] наука
scientific [,saɪənt'fɪk] научный
scientist ['saɪəntɪst] учёный
Scotland ['skɒtlənd] Шотландия
scream [skri:m] пронзительно
кричать
screen [skri:n] экран
sculpture ['skalptʃə] скульптура
seaside ['si:sайд] побережье моря
at the seaside на взморье
to go to the seaside поехать на
взморье
seem [si:m] казаться
seldom ['seldəm] редко
selfish ['selfiʃ] эгоистичный
senate 17 ['senit] сенат
senator 17 ['senətə] сенатор
sense [sens] чувство
a sense of humour чувство
юмора
sentence ['sentəns] предложение
separate ['sepəreɪt] отделять

serious ['sɪərɪəs] серьёзный
seriously ['sɪərɪəslɪ] серьёзно
serve 14 [sɜ:v] 1. служить 2. об-
служивать
service ['sɜ:vis] служба; обслужи-
вание
set (set, set) [set] 1. накрывать
(на стол) 2. садиться (о солн-
це)
to set to work приняться за
работу
shamrock ['ʃæmrək] клевер
shape 8 [ʃeip] форма
shave [ʃeɪv] бриться
shock 5 [ʃɒk] шок
to be shocked быть шокиро-
ванным
shoe [ʃu:] ботинок
shoemaker ['ʃu:,meɪkə] башмач-
ник, сапожник
shoot (shot, shot) 18 [ʃu:t] стре-
лять, застрелить
shore 16 [ʃɔ:] берег (моря, озера)
shortage 4 ['ʃɔ:tɪfʒ] недостаток,
нехватка
shower 1 ['ʃaʊə] 1. душ 2. силь-
ный дождь, ливень
shy [ʃai] застенчивый, скромный
Siberia [sai'bɪəriə] Сибирь
sick [sik] больной
side [saɪd] 1. сторона 2. бок
sign [saɪn] *n* знак; *v* подписывать
silk [silk] шёлк
single (ticket) ['sɪŋgl] билет в од-
ном направлении
sitting room ['sɪtɪŋ ʁʊm] гостиная
situated ['sitjueɪtɪd] расположен-
ный
to be situated располагаться
situation [,sɪtju'eʃn] ситуация
skin [skin] кожа, шкура
skirt [skɜ:t] юбка
skyscraper 16 ['skai,skreɪpə] небо-
скреб
slave [sleiv] раб
slavery 17 ['sleivərɪ] рабство
sleep (slept, slept) [sli:p] *n* сон; *v*
спать

to sleep in/out спать в доме/на открытом воздухе
slice [slais] тонкий кусочек
slim [slim] стройный
smart [smɑ:t] умный; нарядный
smell [smel] *n* запах; *v* (**smelt**, **smelt**) пахнуть
snail [sneil] улитка
snow [snəʊ] снег
It often snows here. Здесь часто идёт снег.
It is snowing hard. Идёт сильный снег.
snowdrop ['snəʊdρɒp] подснежник
society 5 [sə'saɪəti] общество
soft [soft] мягкий
soft drink ['soft'drɪŋk] безалкогольный напиток
soldier ['səʊldʒə] солдат
solve [solv] решать
south [saʊθ] юг
southeast [,saʊθ'i:st] юго-восток
southwest [,saʊθ'west] юго-запад
space [speis] 1. космос 2. пространство
spaceship ['speisʃip] космический корабль
Spain [spein] Испания
Spanish ['spæniʃ] испанский
species (*pl* **species**) 3 ['spi:si:z] об разец (образцы); вид (виды)
spider ['spaɪdə] паук
spoil 5 [spɔɪl] (ис)портить
spoon [spu:n] ложка
spy [spaɪ] шпион
square [skweə] *n* площадь; *adj* квадратный
in the square на площади
stage [steɪ] *n* сцена; *v* ставить на сцене
on the stage на сцене
stairs [steəz] лестница
stalls [stɔ:lz] партер
in the stalls в партере
start [sta:t] *n* начало; *v* начинать
state [steɪt] 1. штат 2. государство

statement ['steɪtmənt] утверждение
statue ['stætju:] статуя
stay [steɪ] 1. останавливаться
2. оставаться
to stay at a hotel останавливаться в отеле
to stay in/out оставаться внутри/снаружи
to stay with sb останавливаться у кого-л.
stepbrother 18 ['step,bρʌðə] сводный брат
stepchild 18 ['step,tʃaɪld] приёмный ребёнок
stepdaughter 18 ['step,dɔ:tə] падчерица
stepfather 18 ['step,fɑ:θə] отчим
stepmother 18 ['step,mʌðə] мачеха
stepsister 18 ['step,sistə] сводная сестра
stepson ['steptson] приёмный сын
stop [stɒp] *n* остановка; *v* останавливааться
store [stɔ:] магазин (большой)
storm [stɔ:m] штурм, буря
a **storm of applause** шквал аплодисментов
story ['stɔ:rɪ] история, рассказ
storyteller 18 ['stɔ:rɪ,telə] рассказчик
strange [streɪndʒ] странный, неизвестный
straw [strɔ:] солома
stream 14 [stri:m] ручей
strength [strenθ] сила
strengthen ['strenθen] усиливать, укреплять
stretch 16 [stretʃ] растягивать, вытягивать
strike (struck, struck) 13 [straɪk]
1. бить, ударять, наносить удар 2. бить (о часах) 3. поражать
to strike a blow нанести удар
to be struck by sth быть пораженным чем-л.

striking 13 ['straɪkɪŋ] удивительный, поразительный
stripe [straɪp] полоса
student ['stju:dnt] студент, учащийся
stupid 10 ['stju:pɪd] глупый
suffer (from) ['sʌfə] страдать (от)
suit [sju:t] подходить, устраивать
It suits me. Мне это подходит.
suitable 21 ['sju:təbl] подходящий
sunflower ['sʌnflaʊə] подсолнух
sunlight 2 ['sʌnlait] солнечный свет
sunny ['sʌni] солнечный
sunshine 2 ['sʌnʃain] солнечный свет
supermarket ['su:pə,ma:kɪt] универсам
support 17 [sə'pɔ:t] *n* поддержка; *v* поддерживать
surf 21 [sɜ:f] заниматься серфингом
surname ['sɜ:nneɪm] фамилия
surprise [sə'praɪz] удивление
surround [sə'rəʊnd] окружать
survive [sə'veɪv] выживать
swamp 20 ['swɒmp] болото
swampy 20 ['swɒmpi] болотистый
swan ['swɒn] лебедь
sweet [swi:t] *n* конфета; *adj* сладкий
symbol ['sɪmbəl] символ

Т

take (took, taken) [teɪk] брать
to take after sb быть похожим на кого-л.
to take away убрать, унести прочь, увести прочь
to take back отнести на место, вернуть
to take down 1. снимать 2. записывать под диктовку

to take a bus (train, plane) сесть на автобус (поезд, самолёт)
to take off снимать; взлетать (*о самолёте*)
to take pictures делать фотографии, фотографировать
taxes ['tæksɪz] налоги
team [ti:m] команда
teenager 10 ['ti:n,eɪfʒə] подросток
telex ['teleks] телекс
temperature ['temprɪtʃə] температура
term 5, 17 [tɜ:m] 1. срок 2. четверть, семестр
territory 20 ['terɪtɔri] территория
test 4 [test] *n* испытание, тест; *v* испытывать, проводить испытания
Thames, the [temz] Темза
thistle ['θɪsl] репейник, чертополох
thought [θɔ:t] мысль
thousand ['θaʊzənd] тысяча
throne 9 ['θrəʊn] трон, престол
throw (threw, thrown) [θrəʊ] бросать
tidy ['taɪdɪ] аккуратный, опрятный
tin [tɪn] консервная банка
a tin of meat банка мясных консервов
title ['taɪtl] заглавие
ton 4 [tʌn] тонна
tongue [tʌŋ] язык
tongue-twister challenge ['tʌŋ,twɪstə 'tʃæləndʒ] попробуй сказать скороговорку
tonight [tə'nait] сегодня вечером
top 10 [tɒp] вершина
at the top of sth на верху чего-л.
at the top of one's voice изо всех сил
topic ['tɒpɪk] тема
touch 9 [tʌtʃ] трогать
touching 9 ['tʌtʃɪŋ] трогательный
tourism ['tuərɪzm] туризм

tourist ['tuərist] турист
trade 13 [treɪd] торговля
tradition [trə'dɪʃn] традиция
traditional [trə'dɪʃnəl] традиционный
traffic ['træfɪk] движение (уличное)
tragedy 9 ['trædʒədɪ] трагедия
transport ['trænspo:t] транспорт
trip [trɪp] поездка, короткое путешествие
tropical 20 ['trɒpɪkl] тропический
trouble ['trʌbl] *n* беда, неприятность; *v* беспокоить
troublemaker ['trʌbl,meɪkə] про-казник, смутьян, нарушитель спокойствия
trunk 17 [trʌŋk] 1. ствол 2. хобот
trust 18 [trʌst] доверять
T-shirt ['ti:fɜ:t] футболка
turtle ['tɜ:tł] черепаха (морская)
twin [twɪn] близнец
type [taip] печатать
typist ['taipɪst] машинистка

U

ultraviolet 4 [,ʌltrə'veiəlt] ультрафиолетовый
ultraviolet radiation ультрафиолетовое излучение
unbuilt [,ʌn'bɪlt] непостроенный
uncomfortable [,ʌn'kʌmftəbl] неудобный
uncooked [,ʌn'ku:kɪt] сырой, не-приготовленный (*о пище*)
uncountable [,ʌn'kaʊntəbl] неисчисляемый
uncovered [,ʌn'kʌvəd] неприкрытый, открытый
undeclared [,ʌndɪ'kleəd] необъявленный, непровозглашённый
underground ['ʌndəgraʊnd] метро, подземка
to take the underground ехать на метро

underline ['ʌndəlайн] подчёркивать
underlined word подчёркнутое слово
uneasy [ʌn'i:zɪ] нелёгкий
uneducated [,ʌn'edʒu:kエɪtɪd] необразованный
unfinished [,ʌn'finɪʃt] незаконченный
unfortunately [ʌn'fɔ:tʃnətlɪ] к несчастью
unfriendly [,ʌn'frendlɪ] недружелюбный
unhappy [ʌn'hæpɪ] несчастливый
unimportant [,ʌnɪm'pɔ:tənt] неважный
uninhabited 20 [,ʌnɪn'hæbitɪd] необитаемый
United States of America, the (the United States), the USA (the US) [ju:naitɪd ,steɪts əv ə'merikə], [ju:s'eɪ] Соединенные Штаты Америки (США)
university 8 [,ju:nɪ,vɜ:sətɪ] университет
unkind [,ʌn'kaind] недобрый
unknown [,ʌn'nəʊn] неизвестный
unnoticed [,ʌn'nəʊtɪst] незаметный
unpopular [,ʌn'pʊpʊlə] непопулярный
unspoken [,ʌn'sp्रəukən] невысказанный, невыраженный
untrue [,ʌn'tru:] лживый, неверный
use [ju:z] использовать, употреблять
used [ju:st] *to do sth* иметь обыкновение делать что-л. в прошлом

V

valley 8 ['vælɪ] долина
vast 20 [va:st] обширный
vice president 17 [,vais 'prezɪdənt] вице-президент

video [ˈvɪdiəʊ] видео
village [ˈvɪlɪdʒ] деревня
visit [ˈvɪzɪt] *n* посещение, визит; *v* посещать
a **visiting day** день посещений
visitor 14 [ˈvɪzɪtə] посетитель, гость
vocabulary [vəʊˈkæbjʊləri] словарь
vote 17 [vəʊt] голосование
vowel [ˈvaʊəl] гласная
voyage [ˈvoɪɪdʒ] путешествие (*морем, рекой*)
to go on a **voyage** поехать в морское путешествие

W

waste 4 [weɪst] отходы
watch [wɒtʃ] *n* часы (*ручные*); *v* смотреть, наблюдать
water [ˈwɔ:tə] *n* вода; *v* поливать
waterfall 8 [ˈwɔ:təfɔ:l] водопад
waterway [ˈwɔ:təwei] водный путь
way [weɪ] 1. путь, дорога 2. способ, образ
wealth [welθ] богатство
wealthy [welθi] богатый, состоятельный
weapon 4 ['wepən] оружие
weather [ˈwedə] погода
weather forecast прогноз погоды
weatherman 1 ['wedəmæn] синоптик
west [west] запад
wet [wet] сырой, мокрый
whale [weɪl] кит
wheat 20 [wi:t] пшеница
while [waɪl] пока, в то время как
for a while 10 в течение какого-то времени
whisper ['wɪspə] *n* шёпот; *v* шептать

whole [həʊl] целый, весь
wicked 10 ['wɪkɪd] 1. злой, злобный 2. нехороший, шаловливый
wickedly 10 ['wɪkɪdlɪ] зло, дурно
widespread ['waɪdspred] широко распространенный
width [widθ] ширина
wild [waɪld] дикий
wildland 16 ['waɪndlænd] земли, не тронутые деятельностью человека
windy ['windɪ] ветреный
wing [wɪŋ] крыло
wisdom 18 ['wɪzdəm] мудрость
wise [waɪz] мудрый
wish [wɪʃ] желать
witch [wɪtʃ] ведьма, колдунья
wool [wu:l] *n* шерсть
world [wɜ:ld] мир, свет, вселенная
all over the world по всему свету
worry ['wʌrɪ] беспокоиться, мучиться

Y

year [jɪə] год
yellow [ˈjeləʊ] жёлтый
yesterday ['jestədɪ] вчера
yet [jet] 1. ещё не 2. уже
young [jʌŋ] молодой
the young 1. малыш 2. молодёжь

Z

zoo [zu:] зоопарк
at the zoo в зоопарке

CONTENTS

Unit 1 Weather	3	Unit 14 Wales	186
Text "The Weather Forecast"	13	Text	197
Unit 2 Climate	17	The USA	
Text "Climate"	24	Unit 15 How Much Do We Know About the USA?	204
Unit 3 The Natural World	30	Text "A Trip to the USA".	208
Text "Natural World in Danger"	43	Unit 16 Geographical Outlook	212
Unit 4 Man and the Natural World	48	Text "Country and People"	223
Text "This Fragile Planet".	58	Unit 17 Political Outlook	228
Unit 5 Ecology	66	Text "Who Rules the Country?"	240
Text "'Clean Up the Countryside' Society"	75	Unit 18 American Presidents	246
Unit 6 Consolidation One	81	Text "Two American Presidents"	257
Text "Ecology of Man"	86	Unit 19 Consolidation Three	267
Great Britain			
Unit 7 How Much Do We Know About Britain?	88	Text "American Food and Drink"	270
Text "Halloween Party" ...	92	Australia	
Unit 8 England	94	Unit 20 Geographical Outlook	274
Text "Discover Britain: England"	104	Text "The Unknown Southern Land"	286
Unit 9 England	112	Unit 21 Climate and Wildlife	294
Text "Royal London"	122	Text "The Most Extraordinary Country to Explore"	305
Unit 10 Shakespeare's Land	131	Unit 22 Consolidation Four	311
Text "The Actors Come to Town"	143	Text "Words We Use"	314
Unit 11 Consolidation Two	150	Vocabulary	
Text "Greetings Cards"	155		317
Unit 12 Holidays	160		
Text "A Christmas Carol"	162		
Unit 13 Scotland	168		
Text "Scotland the Beautiful"	179		